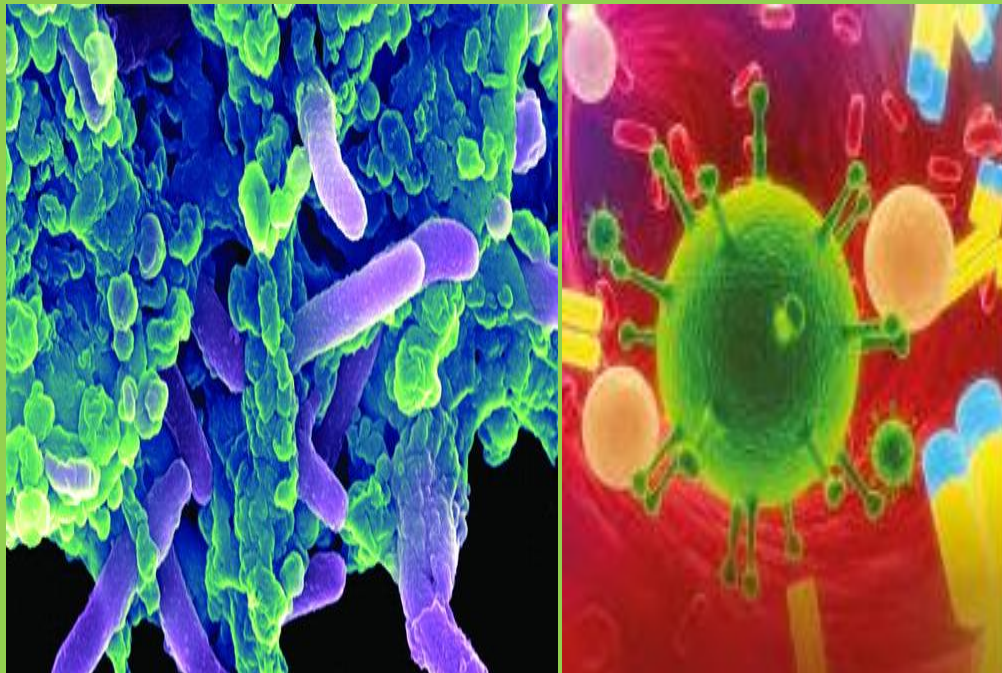




**BSCZO- 302**

**B. Sc. III YEAR**  
**MICROBIOLOGY AND IMMUNOLOGY**



**DEPARTMENT OF ZOOLOGY**  
**SCHOOL OF SCIENCES**  
**UTTARAKHAND OPEN UNIVERSITY**

**BSCZO-302**

# **MICROBIOLOGY AND IMMUNOLOGY**



**DEPARTMENT OF ZOOLOGY  
SCHOOL OF SCIENCES  
UTTARAKHAND OPEN UNIVERSITY**

**Phone No. 05946-261122, 261123**

**Toll free No. 18001804025**

**Fax No. 05946-264232, E. mail [info@uou.ac.in](mailto:info@uou.ac.in)**

**<http://uou.ac.in>**

---

## MEMBER OF THE BOARD OF STUDIES

---

**Prof.P.D.Pant**

**Director** I/C School of Sciences  
Uttarakhand Open University

**Prof. B.D.Joshi**

Retd.Prof.  
Gurukul Kangri University, Haridwar.

**Prof. H.C.S.Bisht**

Department of Zoology  
DSB Campus, Kumaun University,  
Nainital.

**Prof. H.C.Tiwari**

Retd. Prof. & Principal  
Haldwani Nainital.

**Dr.N.N.Pandey**

Principal Scientist,  
Directorate of Coldwater Fisheries (DCFR)  
Indian Council of Agriculture Research (ICAR)  
Bhimtal (Nainital).

**Dr.Shyam S. Kunjwal**

Department of Zoology  
Uttarakhand Open University  
Haldwani (Nainital)

---

## PROGRAMME COORDINATOR

---

**Dr.Shyam S. Kunjwal**

Department of Zoology  
School of Sciences  
Uttarakhand Open University  
Haldwani (Nainital).

---

### Unit Writer

### Unit no.

---

**1. Dr.Gopal Krishna Joshi**

Assistant Professor  
Department of Zoology & Biotechnology  
HNB Campus Srinagar,  
Uttarakhand

**Unit: 1 & 2****2. Dr.Gagan Matta**

Assistant Professor  
Department of Zoology & Environmental Science  
G.K.U Haridwar  
Uttarakhand

**Unit: 3, 4, 5, 6****3. Dr.Shyam S. Kunjwal**

Department of Zoology  
School of Sciences, Uttarakhand Open University,  
Haldwani, Nainital

**Unit: 7,8&9**

## **COURSE EDITOR**

**Prof. Hem Chandra Tiwari**

Retd.Principal

Department of Zoology

MB Govt.PG College Haldwani, Nainital

<b>Course Title and code</b>	<b>: MICROBIOLOGY AND IMMUNOLOGY (BSCZO302)</b>
<b>ISBN No.</b>	<b>: 978-93-90845-63-7</b>
<b>Copyright</b>	<b>: Uttarakhand Open University</b>
<b>Edition</b>	<b>: 2019</b>
<b>Published by</b>	<b>: Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani, Nainital- 263139</b>
<b>Printed by</b>	<b>:</b>

# CONTENTS

**COURSE 10: MICROBIOLOGY AND IMMUNOLOGY**

**COURSE CODE: BSCZO302**

**CREDIT: 3**

Unit number	Block and Unit title	Page number
	<b>BLOCK I: MICROBIOLOGY</b>	
<b>1</b>	Diversity of microbes: Kinds of Microbes, Viruses, Archaea, Bacteria, Eukaryotic microorganism and typical structure of bacterium and virus.	<b>1-15</b>
<b>2</b>	Culture of microbes: Sterilization, disinfection, culturing, media preparation, isolation, culturing growth and identification of microorganism.	<b>16-29</b>
	<b>BLOCK II: IMMUNOLOGY</b>	
<b>3.</b>	Overview of immune system: Innate, adaptive (cell mediated and humoral), active and passive immunity (artificial and natural).	<b>30-51</b>
<b>4.</b>	Cells and organs of immune system: Organ of immune system: primary and secondary lymphoid organs and lymphatic system.	<b>52-78</b>
<b>5.</b>	<b>Humoral immunity:</b> Antigen: Antigenicity, Adjuvants and Haptens, Immunoglobulins: types structure and function, complement system (antigen, antibody reactions).	<b>79-106</b>
<b>6.</b>	<b>Cell mediated immunity:</b> Structural organization of MHC complex, Antigen processing and presentation. Functions of T-cells.	<b>107-124</b>
<b>7.</b>	<b>Applications of immunology:</b> Brief introduction to vaccines, immunodiagnosis and immunotherapy	<b>125-157</b>
	<b>BLOCK III: TOXICOLOGY</b>	
<b>8.</b>	<b>Toxin:</b> Kind and source of toxic agents, Synthetic organic compounds, natural occurring toxins, inorganic chemicals. Dose-response relationship. Routes of entry. Environmental movement and fate of toxin. Mode of action: chronic, natural poisons.	<b>158-192</b>
<b>9.</b>	<b>Analytic toxicology:</b> Toxic responses of blood. Organ function tests, teratogenic, reproductive and carcinogenic tests.	<b>193-232</b>

# **BLOCK I: MICROBIOLOGY**

---

## **UNIT 1 DIVERSITY OF MICROBES**

---

### **CONTENT**

- 1.1 Objective
- 1.2 Introduction
- 1.3 Basic introduction to Microbiology
  - 1.3.1 Kinds of microbes
  - 1.3.2 Viruses
  - 1.3.3 Archaea
  - 1.3.4 Bacteria
  - 1.3.5 Eukaryotic microorganisms
  - 1.3.6 Typical structure of bacteria
  - 1.3.7 Typical structure of virus
- 1.4 Summary
- 1.5 Glossary
- 1.6 Self Assessment questions
- 1.7 References

---

## 1.1 OBJECTIVES

---

- To understand basic study area of Microbiology.
- To study different kinds of microbes like Viruses, Archaea, Bacteria etc.,

---

## 1.2 INTRODUCTION

---

### **What is Microbiology?**

Microbiology is the special branch of biology that deals with the study of microscopic organisms or microorganisms. Microorganisms comprise a large and diverse group of very small organisms that exist as single cells or cell clusters and normally observable only through a microscope. Both prokaryotic and eukaryotic types of microorganisms are found on this earth. In addition to this, non-cellular living structures called viruses are also included in this category.

Individual cell of multicellular eukaryotic creatures is different from microbial cells in the sense that they are unable to live alone in nature and can exist only as constituent part of the body of the larger organism. In contrast to higher organisms, microorganisms are generally able to exhibit essential life features like growth, energy generation and reproduction independently of other cells, either of the same kind or of a different kind.

### **Distribution of microorganisms in nature**

Microorganisms are prevalent nearly everywhere in nature under diverse geographical conditions ranging from the bottom of ocean to the peaks of icy mountains. They can be carried by air currents from the earth's surface to the upper atmosphere. The microbes are found abundantly in places where they find food, moisture and suitable temperature and pH for growth and multiplication.

### **Impact of microorganisms**

Understanding the life processes of microorganism is of huge importance for us. The initial attempts in this direction were limited to the study of disease related pathogenic microorganisms. It was only since the last century, the immense benefits of these tiny

creatures in many industrial sectors were realized by mankind. Some microorganisms are well known to produce antimicrobial compounds in the form of wonder drug called 'antibiotics'. They have also been a source of various other important industrial products like solvents, enzymes, vitamins, growth factors, flavoring products, therapeutic agents etc. Many important steps of our agriculture system depend on microbial activities. Nitrogen fixation is one of the important activities that is carried out by bacteria by forming nodules in association with leguminous plants. Various other plant growth promoting activities of microorganisms like phosphate solubilization, production of siderophores and phytohormones etc. are also well documented and utilized for increased agricultural yield. Microorganisms have an important role in food industry also where they are utilized for manufacturing of products like cheese, yogurt and buttermilk. In addition to this, various alcoholic beverages are also produced by employing them. Microorganisms are also important in the process of waste disposal and energy production. Various types of sewage and waste disposal system have been designed where microorganism are the principal components. In many cases the waste material can also be transformed into some useful products by microorganism.

---

### **1.3 BASIC INTRODUCTION TO MICROBIOLOGY**

---

---

#### **1.3.1. KINDS OF MICROBES**

---

Although microscopic in nature, microorganisms are highly diverse and heterogenic group of organisms. They may belong to various categories depending on their overall morphology, mode of reproduction, nutrition and various other characteristics. Broadly, they belong to different groups like viruses, archaea, Protozoa, fungi, algae and viruses which may further be sub classified into various subgroups.

---

#### **1.3.2 VIRUSES**

---

Viruses are non-cellular infectious entities having either DNA or RNA as their genome. They cannot grow in artificial media as they lack metabolic machinery of their own for growth and reproduction. They require living host such as plants, animals or other microorganisms to grow and are thus regarded as obligate endoparasites. In 1852, a Russian botanist D.I.



Ivanovsky demonstrated that the extract from tobacco plants suffering from mosaic disease retained its infectious nature even when passed through a filter to prevent the passage of bacteria. Beijerinck, in 1898, coined the name 'virus' to describe the infectious nature of filtered plant fluids.

Viruses come in an amazing variety of shapes and sizes. They are very small and are measured in nanometers, which is one-billionth of a meter. Viruses can range in the size between 20 to 750nm, which is 45,000 times smaller than the width of a human hair. The majority of viruses cannot be seen with a light microscope because the resolution of a light microscope is limited to about 200nm, so a scanning electron microscope is required to view most viruses.

### **Characteristics of viruses**

- Viruses are the smallest living organisms.
- Unlike other organisms they do not have a cellular structure.
- They can only reproduce by invading living cells by utilizing the metabolic machinery of the host for their own growth.
- Structurally, they just consist of a small piece of nucleic acid, either DNA or RNA, surrounded by a protein or lipoprotein coat.
- They form the boundary between living and non-living objects
- Viruses can have a broad or narrow range of hosts

### **Virus multiplication**

Viruses generally employ a common strategy to replicate. For this they come in contact with their host cell surface and inject their genetic material inside. The genetic material of viruses contains genes for viral coat proteins as well as those for initiating and regulating the viral DNA replication, transcription and translation. Once inside the host cell, the viral genes are expressed and genetic material is replicated many times with the help of the enzymes and cellular machinery of the host cell. Finally many copies of the viral genetic material and coat proteins are manufactured inside the host cells which are further assembled to form numerous new virus particles. These virus particles finally release from the host cell in most of the cases by rupturing and killing it.

**Viruses as agents of diseases:**

Viruses infect both eukaryotic and prokaryotic cells. Viruses cause a wide range of diseases among plants, animals and fungi. Diseases of humans caused by viruses include measles, chickenpox, influenza, herpes, AIDS, hepatitis, dengue etc. There are evidences that viruses may be the causative agent of some kind of cancers also.

---

**1.3.3- ARCHAEA**

---

Archaea are a domain of single cell prokaryotic organisms that normally inhabit the extreme environment on the earth. Like bacteria they do not have cell nucleus or any other membranous organelles inside their cells. However, they have distinct molecular characteristics separating them from bacteria e.g. archaea cell walls do not contain peptidoglycan like bacteria. They have different membrane lipid composition than bacteria.

**Distribution**

Archaeans include inhabitants of most extreme environments on the planet. Some live in deep sea while others live in hot spring or in extremely acidic or alkaline environment. They have been found thriving inside the digestive tracts of cows, termites and marine life where they produce methane. They live in the anoxic muds of marshes and at the bottom of the ocean, and even thrive in petroleum deposits deep underground.

**Types of Archaea**

There are three main types of Archaea:

- 1) Crenarchaeota- these are characterized by their ability to tolerate extreme in temperature and acidity.
- 2) Euryarchaeota- these include methane producers and salt lovers.
- 3) Korarchaeota - a catch-all group for archaeans about which very little is known.

---

**1.3.4- BACTERIA**

---

Bacteria are small, unicellular microscopic organisms approximately 0.5 to 1.0  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter with variable shapes. Bacteria can survive in various extreme conditions because of their ability to reproduce faster and transform into metabolically inert yet live forms called

spores. Bacteria are important part of our ecosystem as they carry out various chemical transformations which are essential for sustaining life on the earth. They are the natural scavengers on the earth which cause decaying of dead and waste matter and hence protect the environment by recycling of elements. Bacteria are important for the survival of both animal and plants. Each animal has a normal bacterial flora in its body particularly in the guts for carrying out processes for complete digestion and degradation of unused food. Plants also depend on the bacterial activity for enhancement of soil fertility. Since last century bacteria are being used industrially for the production of a number of food items, nutrient supplements, medicines, flavouring agents, vaccines, solvents, enzymes, antibiotics etc. Unfortunately, many of them are the causative agents of various animal and plant diseases also.

---

### 1.3.5-EUKARYOTIC MICROORGANISMS

---

The eukaryotic microorganism includes Protozoa (unicellular), fungi and algae (unicellular or multicellular).

#### PROTOZOA

The protozoa are heterotrophic, single celled, eukaryotic microorganisms with diameter between 5 and 250 micrometers. They are found in almost all moist habitats and commonly present in the sea, soil and freshwater. Members of these groups are free-living as well as parasitic in nature. The locomotors of protozoa include flagella, cilia or Pseudopodia. They reproduce asexually by binary fission, multiple fission or budding and sexually by conjugation. Study of protozoa is important as many of them infect humans and cause various diseases e.g. plasmodium causes malaria in humans.

#### FUNGI

The fungi (sing. fungus) are a diverse group of eukaryotic heterotrophic microorganisms largely feeding on dead or decaying organic matter. They can also exist as pathogen to plant and animal cells. Fungi are spore-bearing organisms that lack chlorophyll and capable to reproduce by both sexual and asexual modes. Asexual reproduction involves processes like budding, fragmentation, sporulation etc. while sexual reproduction in fungi takes place by means of fusion of compatible nuclei of two parent cells. Several thousand species of fungi

have been characterized so far and the number is expected to rise to many millions in future. The habitats of fungi are quite diverse. Some are aquatic, living primarily in fresh water and few in marine habitat. Most are terrestrial and often play crucial roles in mineralization of organic carbon in nature. Fungi can be broadly classified into two groups i.e. **yeasts** and **molds**. Yeasts are unicellular creatures which resemble bacterial colonies when grown in culture medium. On the other hand, molds are long tangled filaments of cells. These filaments called hyphae (sing., hypha) are intertwined together to form the cotton like structure called mycelium (pl., mycelia). Some fungi are dimorphic that is they exist in two forms.

Fungi are important to us as they break down complex organic compounds, mainly the remains of animal or plant, into simpler compounds that can improve soil fertility. There is a big industrial use of yeasts for making various alcoholic beverages and bakery products. Various filamentous fungi such as *Penicillium* sp. are being used for the production of antibiotics for treatment of infectious diseases in humans and animals. However, fungi are undesirable at many places as they can decompose timber, textiles, food and other materials. They can also cause various diseases in humans, animals and plants.

Algae (sing., alga) are unicellular or multicellular organisms that contain chlorophyll. They form a heterogeneous group in terms of size, habitat and reproductive processes of the members. The microscopic algae are unicellular and comparable in size to bacteria. Their shape of unicellular algae may be spherical, rod like, club-like or spindle like.

Compared to other green plants algae have simple reproductive structures for sexual reproduction in which a unicellular alga itself may function as a gamete. They can also reproduce asexually by producing flagellated spores and/or non motile spores in sporangia. Algae are important for sustaining life on earth as primary producers of organic matters. They are also source of important products of commercial value such as agar, alginic acid and carrageen a. Many algal species are also being used as food or food supplements in different part of the globe.

---

### 1.3.6 TYPICAL STRUCTURE OF BACTERIA

---

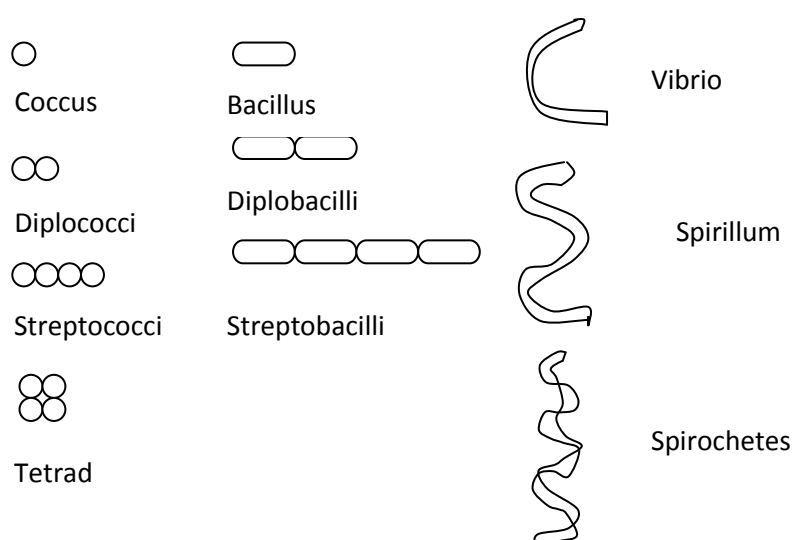
Typical bacterial cell shapes include spherical (coccus, pl.,cocci); straight rods (bacillus, pl.,bacilli) or rods that are helically curved (spiral). Bacterial cell may also exhibit several

other types of non-common shapes like, pear shaped, lobes spheres, rods with squared ends etc. Depending on the species, bacterial cells may prefer to stay together in a characteristic pattern or arrangements. For example group of two spherical bacterial cells known as 'diplococci', a chain of three or more spherical bacteria as 'streptococci' and a group of four spherical cells as 'tetrad'. Similarly, rod shaped bacterial arrangements are called as 'diplobacilli' and 'streptobacilli' which include two cells or a chain of three or more cells, respectively. Spiral bacteria include vibrios which are curved rods, spirilla which are helical and rigid and spirochetes which are helical and flexible (Fig.1) Based on the structure of cell wall, bacteria can be broadly classified into two groups i.e. Gram positive and Gram negative. Compared to Gram negative bacteria, Gram positive bacteria have a thick layer of peptidoglycan in their cell wall. On the other hand, Gram negative bacteria have an additional plasma membrane as part of their cell wall which Gram positive bacteria lack. Fig. 2 depicts a typical bacterial cell structure which contains the following components.

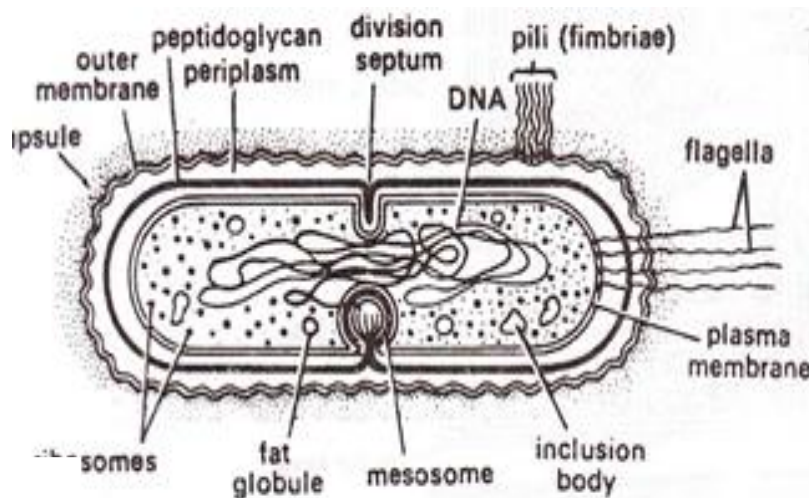
1. **Flagellum**- Bacteria possess hair-like, helical appendages called flagella (singular Flagellum) that protrude through the cell wall and confer swimming motility to it. There are three structural parts of a flagellum i.e. basal body, hook and filament. The protein of the filament is known as flagellin. Depending on the bacterial species, a cell may have flagella at one end, at both ends or throughout the cell surface.
2. **Pili** – Pili (singular pilus) are another filamentous appendages which are hollow, non helical, thinner, shorter, and more numerous than flagella. They play no role in motility instead they are primarily required for a process of genetic recombination in bacteria known as conjugation. They are also believed to be involved in attachment of bacteria to its host cell surface.
3. **Capsule**- Some bacterial cells may be surrounded with a viscous substance made of polysaccharide or polypeptide known as 'Capsule'. Capsules serve a number of functions, which include protection against temporary drying by binding water molecules, blocking attachment of bacteriophage, making resistant against phagocyte cells in host body etc.
4. **Cell wall**- Beneath external structures as capsules, sheaths and flagella is the cell wall, a rigid structure that gives shape to the cell. All bacterial cells except Mycoplasma, contain a cell wall covering the cytoplasmic membrane that is made of Peptidoglycan, a polymer, formed by peptidyl cross linkage of linear chains of the alternating units of N-acetyl glucosamine and N- acetylmuramic linked by beta 1, 4 glycosidic bond. This is an

insoluble, porous, cross-linked polymer of enormous strength and rigidity. Its main function is to prevent the cell from expanding and bursting because of uptake of water, since most bacteria live in hypotonic environments.

5. **Cytoplasmic membrane** – Beneath the cell wall is the Cytoplasmic membrane, which is approximately 7.5nm thick and is primarily composed of phospholipids and membrane proteins. The Cytoplasmic membrane serves as a hydrophobic barrier to penetration by most water soluble molecules. However, there are specific proteins embedded in the cytoplasmic membrane which facilitate the passage of small molecules of nutrients and waste products across the cytoplasmic membrane. Various biochemical reactions of respiration and photosynthesis in photosynthetic bacteria take place across the cytoplasmic membrane.
6. **Cytoplasm** –The entire gelly like viscous material covered by the cytoplasmic membrane of a bacterial cell is known as cytoplasm. It contains bacterial chromosome which is a large single piece of supercoiled DNA confined in a region known as nucleoid. Various other macromolecules like ribosomes, m RNA, tRNA etc. are also present in the cytoplasm. Some bacteria also contain plasmid in the cytoplasm.
7. **Plasmid**- Plasmids are extra-chromosomal small, circular, double stranded DNA molecules that can replicate independently. Plasmids often carry genes that may benefit the survival of the organism for example antibiotic resistance.



*Fig.1.1 Different types of shapes and arrangements of bacterial cells.*



*Fig. 1.2 Typical structure of a bacterial cell*

---

### 1.3.7-TYPICAL STRUCTURE OF VIRUS

---

A complete virus particle consists of the following parts:

- **Genetic material** – All viruses have a genetic material in the form of either DNA or RNA but never both together. A virus particle may contain single or double stranded form of these nucleic acids.
- **Capsid** – This is protein coat that surrounds the genetic material and protect it. Capsid is made up of subunits known as capsomeres. A capsid is formed by the repeated joining of various capsomer molecules in a particular pattern. Capsid structure decides the shape or structure of a virus.
- **Envelope-** Some viruses such as HIV and influenza viruses, have an additional lipoprotein layer around the capsid known as envelope. The envelope is made up of a lipid bilayer derived from the cell surface membrane of the host cell. However, it also contains virally encoded proteins which may serve functions like binding to receptors on the host cell or play a role in membrane fusion and cell entry.

A virus structure can be one of the following: helical, icosahedral or complex.

#### a) Helical

Helical viruses have capsid with a central cavity or hollow tube with nucleic acid in the middle (Fig.3). The capsid is formed by proteins arranged in a circular fashion to create a disc like shapes which are helically attached. They are usually 15-19nm wide and range in length



from 300 to 500nm depending on the genome size. Helical viruses may contain an envelope or not. Examples of enveloped and non enveloped (naked) helical viruses are influenza and tobacco mosaic viruses, respectively.

### b) Icosahedral

These viruses are more-or-less spherical in shape involving icosahedral symmetry for bonding and packaging of capsid subunits (Fig.4). The icosahedron is a regular polyhedron with 20 triangular facets and 12 corners. The genetic material is fully enclosed inside the icosahedrally shaped capsid. Example of enveloped icosahedral viruses is herpes virus whereas poliovirus is a naked virus of this type.

### c) Complex

These virus structures have a combination of icosahedral and helical shape and may have a complex outer wall or head-tail morphology. The examples are bacteriophages i.e. viruses that infects bacteria. The head of many bacteriophages has an icosahedral shape with a helical shaped tail (Fig.5). In some bacteriophages whiskers and collars are present at the top of the tail which is required for efficient tail fiber attachment during phage assembly. At the end of the tails there may occur long tail fibers which help bacteriophage attach to the host cell surface.

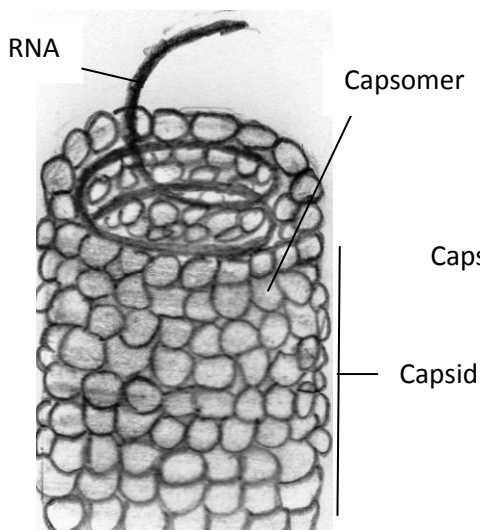


Fig.1.3 Helical virus (TMV)

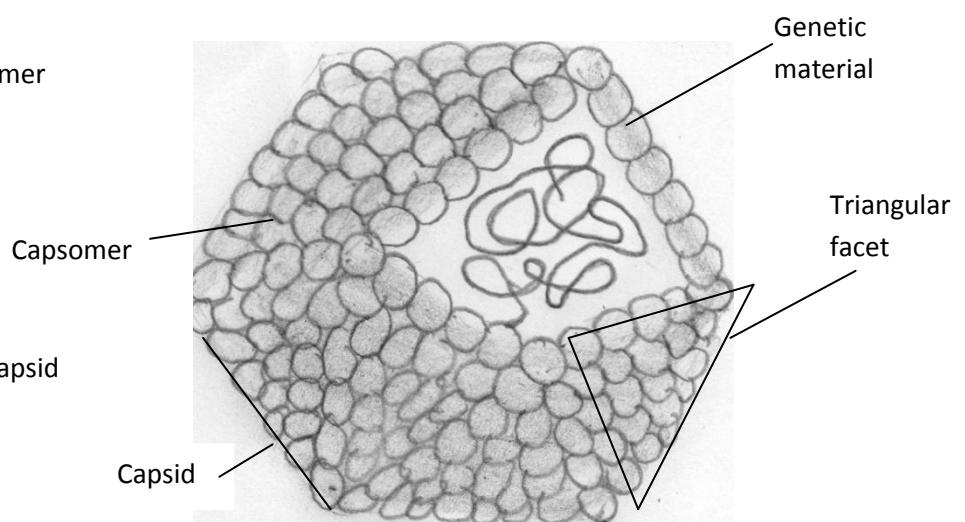


Fig.1.4 Icosahedral virus



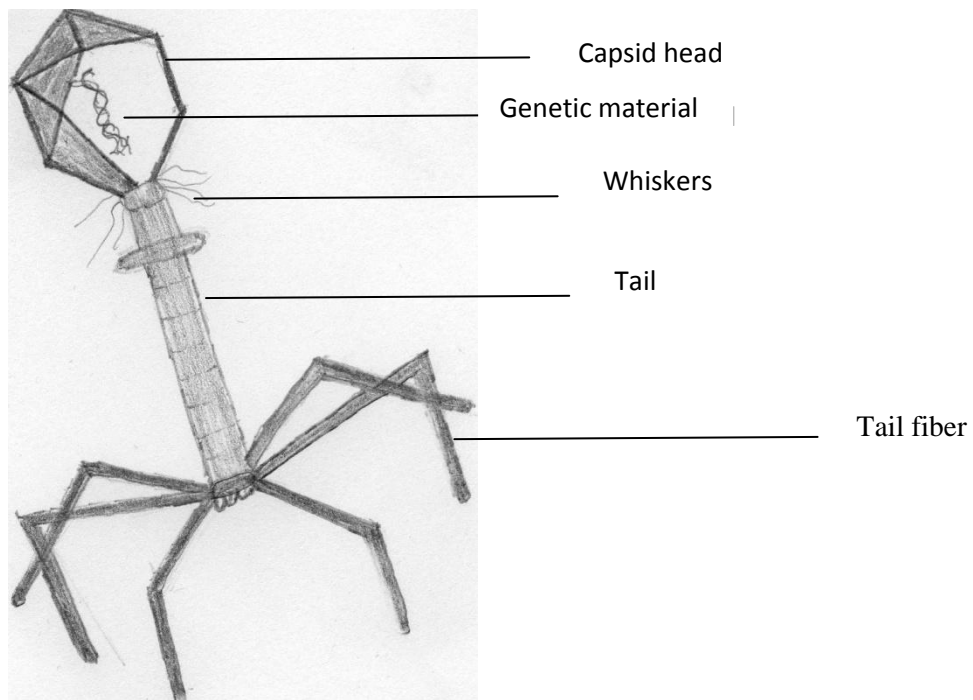


Fig.1.5 Complex virus (Bacteriophage)

---

## 1.4 SUMMARY

---

Microbiology is the study of living organisms which can't be seen in individual form by the naked eyes. These organisms include bacteria, fungi, unicellular algae, protozoa and viruses. Except viruses, all microorganisms have a cellular structure. Depending on their type they may undergo sexual or asexual reproduction or both. Fungi, algae and protozoa are the eukaryotic microorganisms whereas bacteria are prokaryotic. Archae are another class of microorganisms which largely resemble bacteria except few differences. May of them can cause various diseases in humans, animals and plant. However, many of them are very important for their ecological role as well as for medical and industrial applications.

---

## 1.5 GLOSSARY

---

1. **Algae:** chlorophyll containing organisms with simple morphological features that range from microscopic and unicellular to very large and multicellular
2. **Archaea:** Bacteria like prokaryotic organisms inhabiting extreme environment
3. **Bacteria:** a group of microscopic organisms that are prokaryotic in nature
4. **Capsid:** Protein cover that surrounds genetic material in a virus
5. **Capsomer:** Protein subunits of a capsid
6. **Flagella:** Locomotory structures of bacteria
7. **Fungi:** a type of eukaryotic microscopic organism that lacks chlorophyll
8. **Pili:** Hairlike structures on the surface of bacteria used for genetic material transfer and host binding
9. **Plasmid:** Extra chromosomal genetic elements found in some bacteria and yeasts
10. **Prokaryotes:** microscopic organisms like bacteria that lacks membrane covered genetic material
11. **Protozoa:** A type of unicellular eukaryotic microscopic organisms
12. **Virus:** Infectious particle made up of nucleic acid, proteins and sometime a proteo-lipidic envelope

---

## 1.6 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

---

- i) Write short notes on the following
  - a) Bacterial capsule
  - b) Virus multiplication
  - c) Plasmid
  - d) Protozoa
  - e) Microscopic algae
- ii) Describe structure of a typical bacterial cell
- iii) Explain different structure of viruses with the help of labeled diagrams

---

## 1.7 REFERENCES

---

1. Madigan MT, Martinko JM and Parker J. Brock Biology of Microorganism 10<sup>th</sup> edition Pearson Education LTD, London, 2003.
2. Pelczar MJ, Chan ECS and Krieg NR. Microbiology 5<sup>th</sup> edition Tata McGraw- Hill Publishing Company Limited New Delhi, 1998.

---

## 1.7 SUGGESTED READINGS

---

1. Madigan MT, Martinko JM and Parker J. Brock Biology of Microorganism 10<sup>th</sup> edition Pearson Education LTD, London, 2003.
2. Pelczar MJ, Chan ECS and Krieg NR. Microbiology 5<sup>th</sup> edition Tata McGraw- Hill Publishing Company Limited New Delhi, 1998.

---

## 1.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS/ ANSWER

---

### Fill in the blanks

- a) Bacteria like organisms that can survive at extreme conditions are known as\_\_\_\_\_
- b) Helical appendages on bacterial surface for locomotion are known as \_\_\_\_\_
- c) Unicellular fungi are also called\_\_\_\_\_
- d) The protein subunit of capsid is called\_\_\_\_\_
- e) The source of agar is \_\_\_\_\_

Answer: a) Archaea b) Flagella or flagellum c) Yeast d) Capsomer e) Algae

**State True (T) or False (F)**

- a) Bacteria are eukaryotic organisms
- b) Viruses can infect bacteria also
- c) Microscopic algae do not contain chlorophyll
- d) Some fungi are the source of antibiotics
- e) Plasmodium is a type of protozoa

Answer: a) F b) T c) F d) T e) T

---

## UNIT 2: CULTURE OF MICROBES

---

### CONTENT

2.1- Objectives

2.2- Introduction

2.3- Basic Introduction: Culture of Microbes

2.3.1 Sterilization

2.3.2 Disinfection

2.3.3 Culturing.

2.3.4 Media preparation

2.3.5 Isolation.

2.3.6 Growth and identification of microorganism

2.3.7 Identification of microorganisms

2.4 - Reference

2.5 -Summary

---

## 2.1- OBJECTIVES

---

- To learn techniques of microbial sterilization and disinfection
- To learn the techniques involved in laboratory cultivation of microorganisms
- To understand microbial growth
- To learn about the techniques for identification of microorganisms.

---

## 2.2- INTRODUCTION

---

Study of microorganisms is important for us because of their role in human and animal health as well as applications in industries, environment and agriculture. To make study on microorganisms we require them in large number in pure form and this could be possible due to the development of a number of techniques for microbial culture. We are familiar with the cultivation of plants in closed chambers and in a similar way microorganisms can also be grown in the laboratory within various types of culture vessels. As plants need soil full of nutrients for their growth, microorganisms also require nutrients which are provided to them in the form of a culture medium? The unwanted and undesirable kind of microorganisms are destroyed or prevented to grow by various techniques of sterilization and disinfection. Microorganisms can be identified based on their morphological, biochemical and molecular properties.

---

## 2.3- BASIC INTRODUCTION: CULTURE OF MICROBES

---

---

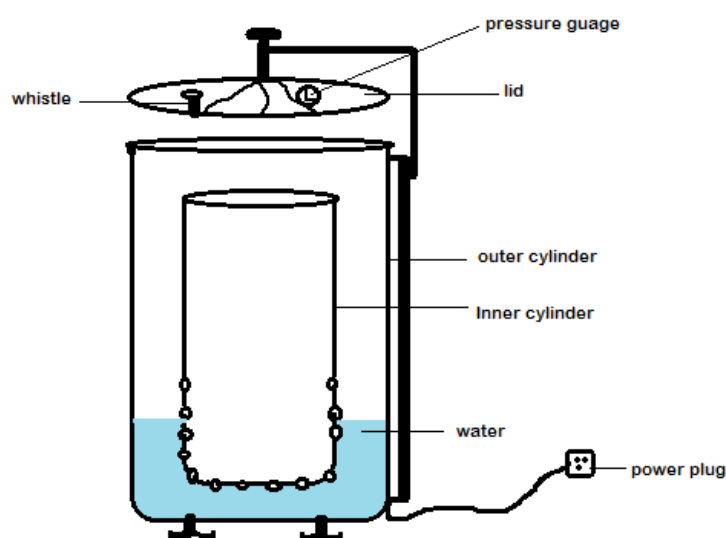
### 2.3.1- STERILIZATION

---

Sterilization means killing, elimination or deactivation of all forms of life including microorganisms from an object. The object can be a surface, a vessel, chemical reagents or culture media, a closed chamber etc. The sterilization process is essential in microbiological lab practices to get rid of the unwanted kind of organisms which, if allowed to grow, can result into several undesirable conditions. There are various ways in which sterilization can

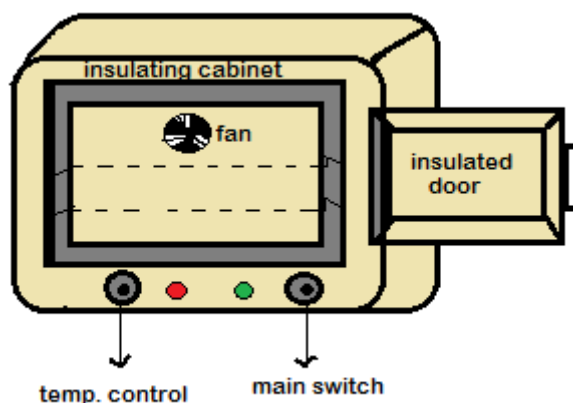
be carried out and this mainly includes treatment of **heat, chemicals, irradiation and filtration**.

Heat sterilization can be achieved by applying wet heat, dry heat or by direct exposure to a flame. Under wet heat sterilization, heat is generated by boiling of water under high pressure. In microbiological laboratories this is normally carried out by using a machine called autoclave which is a double-walled cylindrical apparatus made up of thick stainless steel or copper. There is a provision of a lid at one end to open the autoclave and keep the materials to be sterilized within it. A certain amount of water is filled in the outer cylinder and objects to be sterilized are kept in the inner cylinder having holes all around for the free circulation of the steam (Figure 1). There is a heating element at the bottom inner side of the apparatus which can be connected through a cord to the electrical power connection. While operating the machine the lid is closed and the power is switched on that result in the heating of water filled inside. Since the apparatus is tightly closed a pressure also builds up just like within a pressure cooker. A pressure gauge generally fitted at the lid, measures the pressure and an exhaust valve or whistle releases the extra pressure. A safety valve is also placed in the lid to avoid explosion in case the machine is not operating normally and pressure keeps increasing inside. Generally, the laboratory autoclaves are designed to operate at a pressure and temperature of 15 psi and 121<sup>0</sup>C, respectively. Under these conditions the autoclave is run for 15 minutes to bring about sterilization.



*Figure 2.1: An autoclave and its major components*

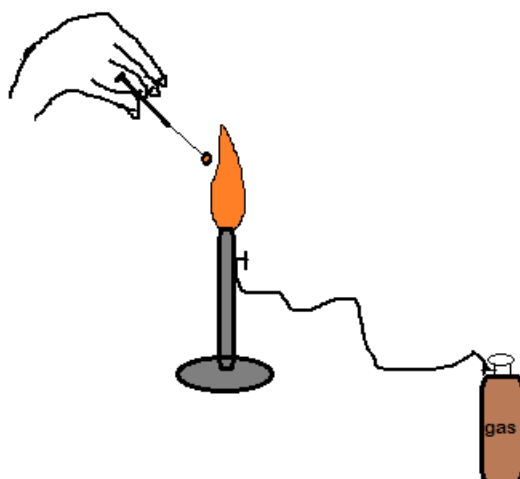
Sterilization using **dry heat/ hot air** takes a longer time compared to wet heat methods. This is suitable for killing a large number of microorganisms and primarily used for sterilization of glass wares such as test tubes, petri plates, beakers, flasks, reagent bottles, glass pipettes, etc, that can tolerate the prolonged exposure to dry heat. Some other heat stable materials including oils, powders, and waxes can also be sterilized using dry heat as they are adversely spoiled by the moist heat of the autoclave. Ovens or hot air ovens as shown in Figure 2 are used for dry heat sterilization. The materials to be sterilized are kept inside the oven where they are exposed to a temperature ranging between 150-200 °C for 2-4 hours depending upon the type of material to be sterilized. Generally, an oven is operated at 160 °C for normal sterilization work and glassware gets fully sterilized within 2 hours.



*Figure2. 2: Image showing parts of hot air oven*

Direct heating on flame (flaming) is a method of choice to sterilize inoculating loops, needles and glass rod spreaders. The loop or needle is kept at the flame of Bunsen burner or spirit lamp unless it turns red (Figure 3). This redness of loop ensures the killing of all microorganisms present on it.





*Figure 2.3: Sterilization of inoculating loop on a flame*

Tyndallization involves periodic heating upto or slightly below the boiling point of water for sterilization of organic material for prolonged period. The technique is however, occasionally used now days for sterilization of materials which cannot withstand high pressure. On the other hand, Incineration is a method in which organic substances are combusted into ashes. This method is used to sterilize various types of bio-hazardous waste material before discarding.

Although heating provides a reliable way of sterilization but it is not suitable for heat-sensitive materials such as biological compounds, fiber optics, electronics, and many type of plastics. Various chemicals in gas or liquid form can be used to sterilize such heat-sensitive objects. Ethylene Oxide is a gas which is very effective to sterilize a variety of materials and kills almost all known bacteria, yeasts, molds, viruses, spores of bacteria and fungi. But it is inflammable and harmful to human health which restricts its excess use. Nitrogen Dioxide can kill a wide range of microbes including spores viruses and common bacteria and therefore, efficiently used for sterilization. Among liquid chemicals, ethyl alcohol is commonly used for surface sterilization of a variety of objects. Liquid and vaporized hydrogen peroxide is another sterilizing agent that has a strong oxidant activity to destroy a wide range of pathogens. The main advantage of  $H_2O_2$  as sterilants is the short time about 28 minutes. In addition to these, Glutaraldehyde and formaldehyde, although commonly used as fixatives, are also accepted as liquid sterilizing agents with longer immersion time.

Radiation is also used for sterilization purposes in microbiology. Gamma rays or ultraviolet rays (UV) are commonly used for this purpose. Gamma rays have very short wave length and high energy and due to that they have high penetrating power and are very lethal to living organisms. This is used for sterilization of materials of considerable thickness and volumes, e.g. plastic wares, packaged foods and medical devices. On the other hand, UV light has a very little penetrating power and therefore can be used for killing of microorganisms on the surface of an object by way of direct exposure to it.

Bacteriological filters are also used for removal of bacterial cells from a liquid material. Although it is not a complete sterilization process but for practical purposes it is very useful and sufficient for preventing the bacterial contamination. Filters for this purpose, called membrane filters, are commercially available and the solution just needs to be filtered under aseptic conditions. The solutions of heat labile compounds such as antibiotics, vitamins etc. are filter sterilized instead of autoclaving.

---

### **2.3.2- DISINFECTION**

---

Disinfection is a process in which harmful microorganism are removed from non-living objects or surfaces. Like sterilization, disinfection also renders an environment contamination free. However, unlike sterilization, in disinfection complete removal of all life forms does not occur as endospores are left intact. Disinfection is frequently required in hospitals, surgical theatres, specialized laboratories, bathrooms, kitchens etc. Disinfection is achieved by the use of certain antimicrobial agents known as disinfectants. Disinfectants are of two types i.e. oxidizing and non-oxidizing. Among oxidizing disinfectants sodium hypochlorite, iodine, hydrogen peroxide are commonly used. Oxidizing agents react with a variety of essential biomolecules within the microbial cell and renders them inactive as a result the organism dies. The oxidizing agents can break the covalent bonds in DNA, RNA and proteins as well as break down lipids into smaller fatty acids. The non-oxidizing disinfectants are also known as coagulating agents that include alcohol, quaternary ammonium compounds, phenol, and glutaraldehyde and ethylene oxide. Action of these non-oxidizing agents on microbial cells results in the cross-linking and coagulation of nucleic acids, proteins and amino acids. The microbial cell can no longer survive due to the inactivation of these key biomolecules.

---

### 2.3.3- CULTURING

---

In microbiology, culturing refers to the cultivation of microorganisms by providing suitable growth conditions in the laboratory. Like other organisms, microbes also require nutrients for their growth. The nutrient molecules are metabolized by microbial cell to carry out various cellular processes to survive and grow. For microbial culturing such nutrients are provided to microorganisms in the form of a medium (plural; media). There can be various different type of media which support the growth of different or common group of microorganisms used for general or specialized purpose. A medium is essentially a mixture of nutrients provided to microorganisms in solid, liquid or semi solid form to allow them to grow or increase their number. After growth, numerous microbial cells are produced on the medium and this is collectively known as a microbial culture. In mixed culture there can be many different types of microorganisms having variation at species, genera or other taxonomic level. On the other hand, pure culture describes a culture in which all the cells are exactly similar to each other pure culture is established by group of cells which are the descendents of the same parental cell.

As stated above, in a culture microbial population is maintained on a medium. Under routine practices in the laboratory a microbial culture is established in solid or liquid medium. The solid medium is kept within a culture tube normally in a slanted position called a 'slant' or within round shaped plates known as petri plates. Microbial culture either as a colony, streak or mat is maintained on the surface of the solid media within the culture vessels.

---

### 2.3.4- MEDIA PREPARATION

---

The food material which is needed by the microorganisms for their growth in the laboratory is regarded as culture medium. The growth of a microbe on the medium itself is called a culture. So the culture medium is a composition with ingredients being various nutrients like inorganic and organic compounds onto which a population of microorganisms (culture) is grown under suitable conditions in the laboratory. It is used to grow, transfer and store microorganisms. Although all microorganisms have almost similar basic molecular requirements but there may prefer various different organic and inorganic compounds as their source. Hence, different types of culture media are used to cultivate different types of

microorganisms. In addition to this, they are also used for identification, enumeration and maintenance of microbial cultures.

Media may be classified into various types like selective media, differential media, maintenance media, enumeration media, media for microbial characterization etc. Selective media are prepared with nutrients which are favourable for the growth of a particular type of microorganisms. The other types are either not supported or their growth is inhibited. For example a medium in which starch is the only source of carbon will be selective for the growth of microorganism which can produce an enzyme 'amylase' for its digestion. Differential media are prepared to distinguish between different groups of microorganisms based on the difference in their growth pattern which can be visually detected. For example, the medium blood agar can be used for differentiating between haemolytic and non-haemolytic bacteria based on the presence of clear haemolytic zone around the bacterial colony on this medium. Maintenance media are developed for maintaining the culture for a longer time by growth under suboptimum conditions. This can be achieved by omitting the rapidly utilizable compounds such as glucose in the medium. Enumeration media are those used for enumeration of the bacterial population of material like milk, water etc. The biochemical properties of a microorganism can be detected by preparing appropriate media for its characterization and identification.

For preparing a medium, first of all, the ingredients of it are determined and accurately weighted and mixed together in water. The pH is also set as per the requirement. To prepare a solid medium, agar, a complex polysaccharide, is also added to it. The whole mixture is sterilized usually in an autoclave. The heat labile compounds such as vitamins, antibiotics etc. can be separately sterilized generally by filtration and added to it under aseptic conditions. The medium is then poured within a Petri plate or a culture tube where due to the gelling properties of agar the whole mixture solidifies as temperature cools down. In case the medium is required in liquid form, no agar is added and it is preferably kept within conical flasks or culture tubes after sterilization.

---

### 2.3.5- ISOLATION

---

In microbiology, isolation is defined as a method of separating and growing specific microbial types from a mixed population. The sources of this mixed population can be

various environments such as soil, water, air, food material, milk products, animal body including humans etc. To isolate a microbial culture from any of these environments, first an appropriate solid or liquid medium is prepared and sterilized. The environmental sample is then brought in contact with the medium. For this, usually the sample with or without dilution is added to the liquid medium or plated or streaked on the solid medium surface. The microbial growth on the liquid medium turns it turbid whereas on the solid medium the microbial growth can be observed as a colony, mat or in a linear pattern in which the sample was streaked on it. In both cases, the microbial mass can arise due to the growth of a mixed population. Out of it pure cultures can be prepared by repeated streaking on the media plates. An example is illustrated in Figure 4 to show the process of bacterial culture isolation from a sample. Here, a known amount of sample i.e. 1gm or 1 ml is first mixed with 9 ml of sterile distilled water to make a final volume of 10 ml. Serial dilutions are made by transferring 1ml of this to 9 ml of sterile distill water and the process is repeated to get fold dilutions as  $10^{-1}$ ,  $10^{-2}$ ,  $10^{-3}$  etc. Number of dilutions to be made depends upon the microbial load of the sample used. For example, samples with high microbial load such as animal feces require more dilutions before plating to obtain individual colonies of microbes.

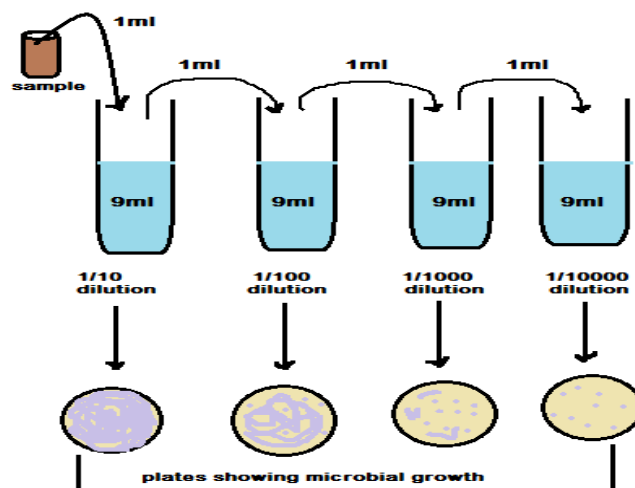


Figure 2.3: Serial dilution and plating of a sample

From each of the serially diluted sample a small amount generally 50-100  $\mu$ l is transferred (called inoculation) on the surface of solid media within sterile Petri plates. The sample is then uniformly spread on the surface with the help of a sterile spreader (L-shaped glass rod). The plates are then kept inverted for incubation at a particular temperature and time duration depending on the preferred growth conditions of the microorganism used. For most of the

bacteria, incubation at 37<sup>0</sup>C for 24 -28h is sufficient. The microbial growth on the plate can be observed after the incubation.

For obtaining a pure culture, e.g. bacteria as obtained in the form of a colony in the previous step can be repeatedly streaked on the petri plate containing media in order to get a pure culture of the same (Figure 5a &b)

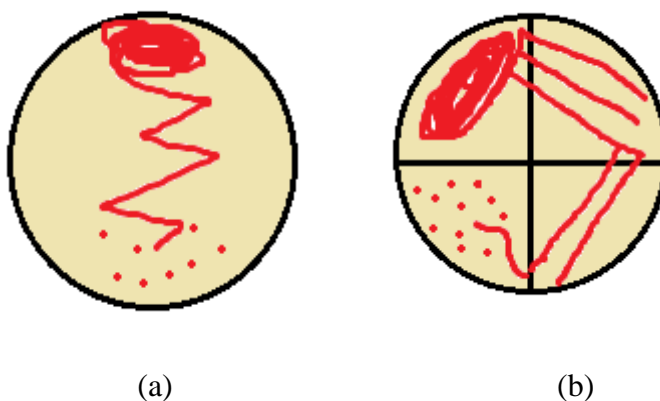


Figure 2.4: Bacterial growth on petri plate after streaking

---

### 2.3.6- GROWTH AND IDENTIFICATION OF MICROORGANISM

---

Microbial growth is generally defined as the orderly increase in the population of microbial cells. Certain physical and environmental factors influence the microbial growth, which mainly include temperature, pH, osmotic pressure, nutrient availability, presence / absence of oxygen etc. Bacteria grow and increase their number in an environment by the process of cell division of a parental cell (Figure 6). Transverse binary fission is the most common and most important mode of cell division in bacteria. In binary fission, one microbial cell divides into two physically and genetically similar daughter cells by developing a transverse septum, also known as a cross wall. The other modes of cell division are budding, fragmentation etc. The daughter cells thus produced, divide further in a similar manner and it goes on for many generation to form a large bacterial population.

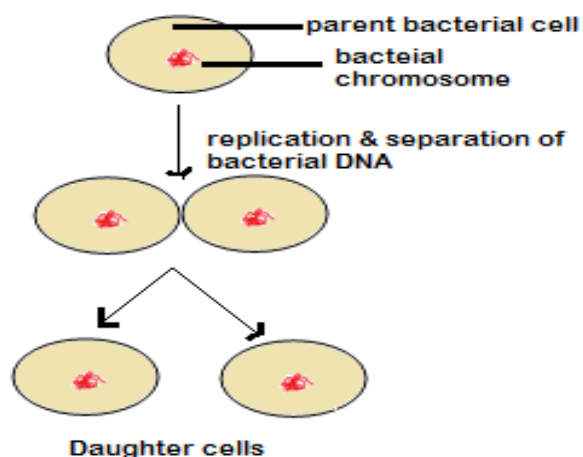


Figure 2.5: Bacterial cell division and growth

In this manner if we consider  $N_0$  number of bacterial cells divide and grow for a time period  $T$  in which 'n' number of division occurs to give a population of  $N$  numbers of cells, the following expression can be defined.

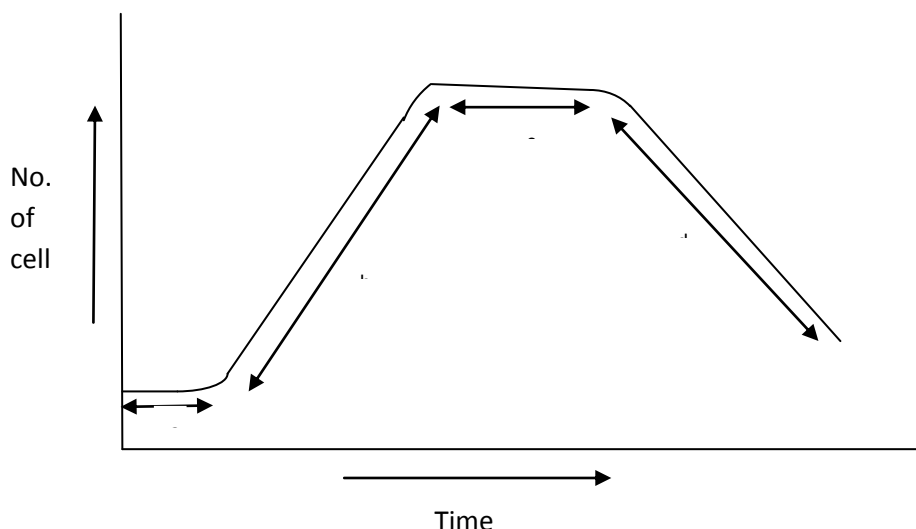
$$N = N_0 \times 2^n$$

This can be reorganized as  $n = 3.3 (\log_{10} N - \log_{10} N_0)$

The generation time  $G$  i.e the time required for the population to double in number can be calculated by the following formula

$$G = T/n = T/3.3 (\log_{10} N - \log_{10} N_0)$$

If we periodically measure bacterial growth by determining the number of cells in a medium and plot against time we shall get a bacterial growth curve that will be very helpful in understanding different stages of growth. A typical bacterial growth with different stages of growth is shown in Figure 7.1.



*Figure 2.6: Bacterial growth curve*

Four distinct bacterial growth stages can be identified in a bacterial growth curve as depicted in Figure 7 as a, b, c & d. The first stage 'a' is Lag phase and it denotes the period of acclimatization. During this period microbes present in the inoculum adjust them to the new environment. Although cells are metabolically very active and grow in size but do not divide at this stage. This is followed by Logarithmic phase or Exponential phase (Stage b). This is the phase of rapid division and growth. During this phase only the mathematical expressions of bacterial growth as mentioned above are effective. The microbial population reaches at its maximum at the end of this phase. Thereafter, further increase in the population does not occur with time and the microorganisms enter the stationary phase (Stage c). This phase arises due to many reasons the most prominent being the depletion of a key nutrient or accumulation of some toxic compounds. The population remains constant during this stage and after this 'death phase' (Stage d) prevails in which rapid decrease in the number of bacterial cells occurs.

---

### **2.3.7- IDENTIFICATION OF MICROORGANISMS**

---

Microorganisms particularly bacteria have been classically identified by examining their morphological and biochemical features and staining characteristics. The immunological reactions of their surface antigens have also been used to classify them. Nowadays with the advent of molecular techniques, DNA sequence based phylogenetic characterization of



microorganisms has become an essential tool in microbial taxonomy. For bacteria, the sequence of 16S rRNA gene is accepted worldwide for species characterization of bacteria. This is also being used for characterizing other higher taxonomic levels such as genera, family, order, class and phylum. Before declaring a bacterial new species, techniques to determine 'percentage G+C content', DNA-DNA cross hybridization, FAME (fatty acid methyl ester) analysis are also employed.

---

## 2.4- SUMMARY

---

Due to the immense importance of microorganisms their routine cultivation in the laboratories is very essential these days. We can establish and maintain microbial culture by knowing some basic techniques. The favourable environment for the desired microbes, which we wish to cultivate, can be created by destroying or preventing the growth of undesired types by sterilization and disinfection. For microbial culture in the laboratory microbes are provided with their food requirements in the form of media. Several kinds of media can be prepared depending on the type of microorganisms. The microorganisms from a sample like soil, water, milk etc. can be grown on a medium and pure cultures comprising a single type of microorganism can be isolated. While establishing a culture on a medium, microorganisms increase their number by division of the parental cells and this is called growth. Various stages of bacterial growth in a liquid medium can be represented by a bacterial growth curve. The microbes can be identified by conventional techniques of morphological and biochemical characterization. The advent of molecular techniques has further refined the process of microbial identification.

---

## 2.7- REFERENCES

---

1. "Division of Oral Health - Infection Control Glossary". U.S. Centres for Disease Control and Prevention. Archived from the original on 13 April 2016. Retrieved 19 April 2016.
2. "Hospital Disinfectants for General Disinfection of Environmental Surfaces" (PDF). *New York State Department of Health*. Archived from the original (PDF) on 24 September 2015. Retrieved 19 April 2016.
3. "WHO Glossary".

4. Aneja K.R (2003), Experiments in Microbiology, Plant Pathology and Biotechnology, 4<sup>th</sup> revised edition; New Age International (P) Limited Publishers.
5. CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics, 76th Ed. 1995
6. Frerichs, Ralph R. "Definitions". [www.ph.ucla.edu](http://www.ph.ucla.edu).
7. Kumar P (2014), Life Science: Fundamentals and practice, 4<sup>th</sup> edition; Pathfinder Publication.
8. Pelczar MJ , Chan ECS , Krieg NR 1993. Microbiology Fifth Edition, TataMcGraw Hill, New Delhi
9. Hong Yoo-J. 2018. Review of disinfection and sterilization-back to the basics. Infection and Chemotherapy, 50(2): 101-109

## **Block II: IMMUNOLOGY**

---

### **UNIT: 3 OVERVIEW OF IMMUNE SYSTEM**

---

#### **CONTENT**

- 3.1 Objectives
- 3.2 Introduction
- 3.3 Importance of immunology
- 3.4 History and origin
- 3.5 Immune System
- 3.6 The Structure of the Immune System
  - 4.6.1 Innate immunity
  - 4.6.2 Adaptive immunity
- 3.7 Active immunity
- 3.8 Passive resistance
- 3.9 Summary
- 3.10 Glossary
- 3.11 Self assessment question and Possible Answers
- 3.12 References

---

### 3.1 OBJECTIVES

---

- To describe the concepts of innate immunity and acquired immunity
- To list the types of innate immunity and acquired immunity
- To explain the mechanism of innate immunity
- To explain the differences between active and passive immunity

---

### 3.2 INTRODUCTION

---

Immunology is “a branch of science that covers the investigation of safe frameworks in all living beings” by **Janeway (2001)**. Immunology is the examination of the immune system and is a basic branch of the helpful and natural sciences. The safe framework shields us from infection through various lines of watch. If the resistant framework isn't functioning as it should, it can realize disease, for instance, autoimmunity, excessive touchiness and tumor. It is similarly now winding up clear that insusceptible reactions add to the headway of various fundamental issue not by and large observed as immunologic, including metabolic, cardiovascular, and neurodegenerative conditions, for instance, Alzheimer's.

---

### 3.3 IMPORTANCE OF IMMUNOLOGY

---

From Edward Jenner's leading work in the 18<sup>th</sup> Century that would finally provoke immunization in its present day shape (an advancement that has likely secure a greater number of lives than some other helpful advance), to the various legitimate breakthroughs forward in the nineteenth and twentieth many years that would incite, notwithstanding different things, safe organ transplantation, the recognizing verification of blood get-togethers, and the now inescapable usage of monoclonal antibodies all through science and social protection, immunology has changed the substance of current arrangement. Immunological research continues extending horizons in our cognizance of how to treat basic restorative issues, with advancing exploration tries in immunotherapy, safe framework diseases, and antibodies for rising pathogens, for instance, Ebola. Pushing our appreciation of key immunology is essential for clinical and business application and has supported the revelation of new diagnostics and solutions to manage a wide group of diseases. Despite the above, joined with impelling development, immunological research has given fundamentally

basic research techniques and mechanical assemblies, for instance, stream cytometry and balancing specialist advancement.

---

### 3.4. HISTORY AND ORIGIN

---

In **1798**, **Edward Jenner** built up the first run through **vaccination** process, for smallpox issues. His work was great to the point, that several of individuals respected him for his decision that vaccination with **cowpox** (identified with cow like steers) could offer resistance to **smallpox**. Like this, the idea of **inoculation** (in Latin 'vacca' signifies 'bovine') was begun. In **1878**, **Louis Pasteur** inadvertently used a debilitate chicken cholera culture and watched, that the debilitated shape spared the chickens from the destructive type of ailment. Later on a contender of Pasteur, **Robert Koch** was the first to isolate the *Bacillus anthracis* living being and, insensible of Pasteur's work, he could show that it caused the medical problem. By then in 1882, Koch could show that the germ hypothesis of sickness associated with human ailments and also animals, when he isolated the microorganism that caused **tuberculosis**. His "Koch's proposes" are up 'til now used to recognize infective living things.

---

### 3.5 IMMUNE SYSTEM

---

The immune organization is a reticule of tissues, organs and cells that work along to protect the body against assaults by “stranger” intruders. These are fundamentally microorganisms (germs), small, disease-causing living beings, for example, viruses, bacteria, fungi and parasites as the human body gives a perfect situation to numerous microorganisms. The insusceptible framework is incredibly intricate. It can perceive and recollect a large number of various foes, and it can create discharges and cells to coordinate with and wipe out every last one of them. The way to its prosperity is a detailed and dynamic correspondence arrange. Millions of cells, sorted out into sets and subsets, accumulate like billows of honey bees swarming around a hive and pass data forward and backward. When resistant cells get the caution, they experience strategic changes and start to create effective chemicals. These substances enable the cells to manage their own particular development and conduct, enroll their colleagues, and direct newcomers to inconvenience spots. The way to a solid safe framework is its capacity to recognize the body's own particular cells—self—and outside cells—non self. The body's invulnerable barriers regularly exist together gently with cells that convey particular "self" marker atoms. In any case, when invulnerable protectors experience

cells or living beings conveying markers that say "remote," they rapidly dispatch an assault. Anything that can trigger this safe reaction is called an antigen. An antigen can be a microorganism, for example, an infection, or even a piece of an organism. Tissues or cells from someone else (with the exception of an indistinguishable twin) additionally convey non self markers and go about as antigens. This clarifies why tissue transplants might be rejected. In unusual circumstances, the safe framework can mix up self for non self and dispatch an assault against the body's own particular cells or tissues. The outcome is called an immune system malady. A few types of joint pain and diabetes are immune system sicknesses. In different cases, the resistant framework reacts to an apparently safe remote substance, for example, ragweed dust. The outcome is hypersensitivity, and this sort of antigen is called an allergen. Practically, a resistant reaction can be separated into two related exercises acknowledgment and reaction. Insusceptible acknowledgment is astounding for its specificity.

---

### **3.6 THE STRUCTURE OF THE IMMUNE SYSTEM**

---

Immunity the condition of security from irresistible sickness has both a not so much particular but rather more particular segment. Immune system is a standout amongst the most critical systems of the body that is vital for human existence. It includes tissues and cells that are related with the protection of our body from various pathogens and irresistible operators. The resistance (or ability to battle an irresistible operator without delivering the indications of sickness) is by and large arranged into two unique sorts: to be specific natural invulnerability and versatile insusceptibility.

---

#### **3.6.1 INNATE IMMUNITY**

---

The innate immune system, otherwise called the non-particular insusceptible framework or in-conceived resistance framework, is a vital subsystem of the general safe framework. Intrinsic invulnerability alludes to nonspecific resistance components that become possibly the most important factor quickly or inside hours of an antigen's appearance in the body. These components incorporate physical obstructions, for example, skin, chemicals in the blood, and safe framework cells that assault remote cells in the body. The intrinsic safe reaction is enacted by compound properties of the antigen The less particular segment, natural insusceptibility, gives the primary line of

guard against contamination. Most segments of intrinsic insusceptibility are available before the beginning of contamination and constitute an arrangement of infection protection systems that are not particular to a specific pathogen but rather that incorporate cell and atomic segments that perceive classes of particles impossible to miss to as often as possible experienced pathogens. Phagocyte cells, for example, macrophages and neutrophils, hindrances, for example, skin, and an assortment of antimicrobial mixes blended by the host all assume imperative parts in intrinsic insusceptibility. Intrinsic invulnerable framework is additionally alluded to as quick reaction resistant framework. This framework actuates inside minutes to hours after an outside operator attacks inside the human body. Natural safe framework is made out of two lines of barriers.

The significant elements of the intrinsic insusceptible framework include:

- Recruiting invulnerable cells to locales of disease, through the generation of substance factors, including specific compound middle people, called cytokines.
- Activation of the supplement course to distinguish microscopic organisms, actuates cells, and advances leeway of neutralizer buildings or dead cells.
- Identification and evacuation of remote substances show in organs, tissues, blood and lymph, by particular white platelets.
- Activation of the versatile insusceptible framework through a procedure known as antigen introduction.
- Acting as a physical and compound hindrance to irresistible specialists.

Intrinsic invulnerability can be believed to contain these sorts of cautious hindrances: anatomic, physiologic, phagocytic, supplement framework and incendiary.

**PHYSICAL AND ANATOMIC BARRIERS:** The physiologic and anatomic obstructions that add to natural insusceptibility incorporate temperature, pH, and different dissolvable and cell related atoms. These keep the passage of pathogens in a creature's initially line of safeguard against disease. The skin and the surface of mucous films are incorporated into this class since they are viable boundaries to the

passage of generally microorganisms. The skin comprises of two unmistakable layers: a more slender external layer—the epidermis—and a thicker layer—the dermis. The epidermis contains a few layers of firmly pressed epithelial cells. The external epidermal layer comprises of dead cells and is loaded with a waterproofing protein called keratin. The dermis, which is made out of connective tissue, contains veins, hair follicles, sebaceous organs, and sweat organs. The sebaceous organs are related with the hair follicles and create a slick emission called sebum. Sebum comprises of lactic corrosive and unsaturated fats, which keep up the pH of the skin in the vicinity of 3 and 5; this pH hinders the development of generally microorganisms. The skin may likewise be entered by gnawing creepy crawlies (e.g., mosquitoes, parasites, ticks, insects, and sand flies); if these harbor pathogenic life forms, they can bring the pathogen into the body as they nourish. The conjunctivae and the wholesome, respiratory, and urogenital tracts are lined by mucous films, not by the dry, defensive skin that covers the outside of the body. These films comprise of an external epithelial layer and a fundamental layer of connective tissue. Various nonspecific resistance systems have a tendency to forestall section of pathogens for instance, salivation, tears, and mucous discharges act to wash away potential trespassers and furthermore contain antibacterial or antiviral substances.

**INFLAMMATORY BARRIERS:** Tissue harm caused by an injury or by an attacking pathogenic microorganism prompts an unpredictable grouping of occasions all things considered known as the provocative reaction. Aggravation is one of the main reactions of the resistant framework to contamination or disturbance. Irritation is animated by substance factors discharged by harmed cells and serves to build up a physical boundary against the spread of disease, and to advance mending of any harmed tissue following the freedom of pathogens. The incendiary reaction is portrayed by the accompanying side effects:

- redness of the skin, because of privately expanded blood dissemination
- heat, either expanded neighborhood temperature, for example, a warm looking about a restricted disease, or a fundamental fever
- swelling of influenced tissues, for example, the upper throat amid the normal icy or joints influenced by rheumatoid joint inflammation



- increased creation of bodily fluid, which can cause side effects like a runny nose or a beneficial hack
- pain, either nearby torment, for example, excruciating joints or a sore throat, or influencing the entire body, for example, body hurts
- possible brokenness of the organs or tissues included

The inflammation process is started by cells effectively show in all tissues, essentially occupant dendritic cells, macrophages, Kupffer cells, mastocytes and histiocytes. These cells exhibit receptors contained at first glance or inside the cell, named pattern recognition receptors (PRRs), which perceive atoms that are comprehensively shared by pathogens however recognizable from have particles, aggregately alluded to as pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs). At the beginning of a contamination, consume, or different wounds, these cells experience enactment (one of their PRRs perceives a PAMP) and discharge incendiary middle people in charge of the clinical indications of aggravation. Synthetic elements created amid irritation are histamine, bradykinin, serotonin, leukotrienes, and prostaglandins which sharpen torment receptors, causing nearby vasodilation of the veins, and pull in phagocytes, particularly neutrophils. Neutrophils at that point trigger different parts of the resistant framework by discharging factors that summon extra leukocytes and lymphocytes. Cytokines delivered by macrophages and different cells of the intrinsic invulnerable framework intervene the incendiary reaction. These cytokines incorporate TNF, HMGB1, and IL-1. The "four cardinal indications of irritation" are rubor (redness), tumor (swelling), calor (warmth), and dolor (torment). The cardinal indications of aggravation mirror the three noteworthy occasions of an incendiary reaction.

**VASODILATION** - an expansion in the measurement of veins of adjacent capillaries exists as the vessels that divert blood from the influenced region choke, bringing about engorgement of the capillary system. The engorged vessels are in charge of tissue redness (erythema) and an expansion in tissue temperature.

An expansion in capillary penetrability encourages a flood of liquid and cells from the engorged vessels into the tissue. The liquid that collects (exudate) has a significantly higher protein content than liquid regularly discharged from the

vasculature. Aggregation of exudate contributes to tissue swelling (edema).

Influx of phagocytes from the vessels into the tissues is encouraged by the expanded porousness of the vessels. The resettlement of phagocytes is a multistep procedure that incorporates adherence of the cells to the endothelial mass of the veins (margination), trailed by their displacement between the narrow endothelial cells into the tissue (diapedesis or extravasation), and, at long last, their relocation through the tissue to the site of the intrusion (chemotaxis). As phagocytic cells aggregate at the site and start to phagocytose microorganisms, they discharge lytic proteins, which can harm adjacent solid cells. The aggregation of dead cells, processed material, and liquid structures a substance called discharge. The final product of aggravation might be the marshaling of a particular resistant reaction to the attack or leeway of the trespasser by segments of the natural invulnerable framework. Once the fiery reaction has died down and the vast majority of the garbage has been gathered up by phagocytic cells, tissue repair and recovery of new tissue starts. Vessels develop into the fibrin of blood coagulation. New connective tissue cells, called fibroblasts, supplant the fibrin as the coagulation breaks up, as fibroblasts and vessels amass, scar tissue is framed.

**COMPLEMENT SYSTEM:** The complement system is a biochemical cascade of the immune system that helps, or “complements”, the ability of antibodies to clear pathogens or mark them for destruction by other cells. The cascade is composed of many plasma proteins, synthesized in the liver, primarily by hepatocytes. The complement system facilitates following actions:

- trigger the recruitment of inflammatory cells
- "tag" pathogens for destruction by other cells by opsonizing, or coating, the surface of the pathogen
- form holes in the plasma membrane of the pathogen, resulting in cytolysis of the pathogen cell, causing the death of the pathogen
- rid the body of neutralised antigen-antibody complexes.

**PHAGOCYtic BARRIERS/CELLS OF THE INNATE IMMUNE RESPONSE:**

Another critical innate protection component is the ingestion of extracellular

particulate material by phagocytosis. Phagocytosis is one sort of endocytosis, the general term for the take-up by a cell of material from its condition. In phagocytosis, a phagocyte's plasma layer grows around the particulate material, which may incorporate entire pathogenic microorganisms, to shape vast vesicles called phagosomes. Most phagocytosis is directed by particular cells, for example, blood monocytes, neutrophils, and tissue macrophages. Most cell sorts are equipped for different types of endocytosis, for example, receptor-intervened endocytosis. The inborn cells incorporate Natural executioner cells, pole cells, eosinophils, basophils; macrophages, neutrophils, and dendritic cells, which work inside the invulnerable framework by distinguishing and wiping out pathogens that may cause contamination.

**MAST CELLS:** These cells are a sort of natural insusceptible cell that dwells in connective tissue and in the mucous films. They are personally connected with wound mending and barrier against pathogens, but on the other hand are frequently connected with sensitivity and anaphylaxis. When enacted, pole cells quickly discharge trademark granules, rich in histamine and heparin, alongside different hormonal arbiters and chemokines, or chemotactic cytokines into nature. Histamine widens veins, causing the trademark indications of aggravation, and enlisted people neutrophils and macrophages.

**MACROPHAGES:** Macrophage from the Greek, signifying "substantial eaters," are extensive phagocytic leukocytes, which can move outside of the vascular framework by moving over the dividers of narrow vessels and entering the territories between cells in quest for attacking pathogens. In tissues, organ-particular macrophages are separated from phagocytic cells introduce in the blood called monocytes. Macrophages are the most effective phagocytes and can phagocytose considerable quantities of microscopic organisms or different cells or microbes. The official of bacterial particles to receptors on the surface of a macrophage triggers it to inundate and devastate the microorganisms through the age of a "respiratory burst", causing the arrival of responsive oxygen species. Pathogens likewise fortify the macrophage to deliver chemokines, which summon different cells to the site of disease.

**NEUTROPHILS:** Neutrophils alongside two other cell sorts (eosinophils and

basophils), are known as granulocytes because of the nearness of granules in their cytoplasm, or as polymorphonuclear cells (PMNs) because of their unmistakable lobed cores. Neutrophil granules contain an assortment of dangerous substances that slaughter or restrain development of microscopic organisms and growths. Like macrophages, neutrophils assault pathogens by actuating a respiratory burst. The fundamental results of the neutrophil respiratory burst are solid oxidizing operators including hydrogen peroxide, free oxygen radicals and hypochlorite. Neutrophils are the most rich sort of phagocyte, regularly speaking to 50-60% of the aggregate coursing leukocytes, and are generally the main cells to land at the site of a contamination. The bone marrow of an ordinary sound grown-up produces more than 100 billion neutrophils for each day, and more than 10 times that numerous every day amid intense aggravation.

**DENDRITIC CELLS (DCS):** Dendritic cells are phagocytic cells show in tissues that are in contact with the outside condition, for the most part the skin (where they are regularly called Langerhans cells), and the inward mucosal covering of the nose, lungs, stomach, and digestive organs. They are named for their similarity to neuronal dendrites, however dendritic cells are not associated with the sensory system. Dendritic cells are vital during the time spent antigen introduction, and fill in as a connection between the intrinsic and versatile insusceptible frameworks.

**BASOPHILS AND EOSINOPHILS:** Basophils and eosinophils are cells identified with the neutrophil. At the point when enacted by a pathogen experience, histamine-discharging basophils are vital in the protection against parasites and assume a part in hypersensitive responses, for example, asthma. Upon actuation, eosinophils emit a scope of exceptionally lethal proteins and free radicals that are profoundly compelling in murdering parasites, however may likewise harm tissue amid an unfavorably susceptible response. Enactment and arrival of poisons by eosinophils are, in this manner, firmly directed to keep any improper tissue pulverization.

**NATURAL KILLER CELLS (NK CELLS):** NK cells are a segment of the inborn resistant framework that does not specifically assault attacking organisms. Or maybe, NK cells devastate traded off host cells, for example, tumor cells or infection

contaminated cells, perceiving such cells by a condition known as "missing self." This term depicts cells with anomalous low levels of a phone surface marker called MHC I (real histocompatibility complex) - a circumstance that can emerge in viral diseases of host cells. They were named "normal executioner" due to the underlying thought that they don't require enactment with a specific end goal to murder cells that are "missing self." For some years, it was vague how NK cell perceive tumor cells and contaminated cells. It is presently realized that the MHC cosmetics on the surface of those cells is adjusted and the NK cells end up plainly initiated through acknowledgment of "missing self". Typical body cells are not perceived and assaulted by NK cells since they express in place self MHC antigens. Those MHC antigens are perceived by executioner cell immunoglobulin receptors (KIR).

**GAMMA/DELTA T CELLS /  $\gamma\delta$  T CELLS:** Like other T cell receptors (TCRs) and Natural Killer T cells,  $\gamma\delta$  T cells show attributes that place them at the outskirts amongst intrinsic and versatile resistance. On one hand,  $\gamma\delta$  T cells might be viewed as a segment of versatile invulnerability in that they rework TCR qualities to create junctional decent variety and build up a memory phenotype. In any case, the different subsets may likewise be considered piece of the inborn safe framework where a limited TCR or NK receptors might be utilized as an example acknowledgment receptor.

---

### 3.6.2. ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY

---

The versatile immunity network, otherwise called the gained invulnerable framework or, all the more once in a while, as the particular insusceptible framework, is a subsystem of the general safe framework that is made out of profoundly specific, fundamental cells and procedures that dispose of or counteract pathogen development. The versatile insusceptible framework is one of the two principle insusceptibility systems found in vertebrates. Versatile insusceptibility alludes to antigen-particular invulnerable reaction. The versatile invulnerable reaction is more unpredictable than the inborn. The antigen initially should be prepared and perceived. Once an antigen has been perceived, the versatile safe framework makes a multitude of resistant cells particularly intended to assault that antigen. Versatile invulnerability

likewise incorporates a "memory" that makes future reactions against a particular antigen more proficient. Versatile insusceptibility reacts to the test with a high level of specificity and additionally the exceptional property of "memory." Typically, there is a versatile resistant reaction against an antigen inside five or six days after the underlying presentation to that antigen. Introduction to a similar antigen at some point later on brings about a memory reaction: the invulnerable reaction to the second test happens more rapidly than the to begin with, is more grounded, and is regularly more compelling in killing and clearing the pathogen. The real specialists of versatile insusceptibility are lymphocytes and the antibodies and different atoms they deliver. Versatile framework is predominantly in charge of more mind boggling responses. This framework initiates after inborn reaction is completely actuated. At first, the antigen entered in body is distinguished by the particular insusceptible cells, and afterward a course of responses is begun as antigen immune response to assault the antigen. This resistant framework likewise incorporates creating memory of antigens, which will spare their personalities in the memory cells with the goal that a particular reaction will be started not long after section of a similar pathogen in future. Versatile invulnerability is equipped for perceiving and specifically killing particular remote microorganisms and particles (i.e., outside antigens). Dissimilar to natural resistant reactions, versatile insusceptible reactions are not the same in all individuals from an animal varieties however are response particular to antigenic difficulties. Versatile resistance makes immunological memory after an underlying reaction to a particular pathogen, and prompts an upgraded reaction to ensuing experiences with that pathogen. This procedure of obtained invulnerability is the premise of inoculation. Like the intrinsic framework, the versatile framework incorporates both humoral insusceptibility parts and cell-interceded resistance segments. Gained invulnerability is activated in when a pathogen avoids the inborn safe framework and creates a limit level of antigen and produces "outsider" or "risk" signals enacting dendritic cells. Not at all like the intrinsic invulnerable framework, is the versatile resistant framework very particular to a specific pathogen. Versatile insusceptibility can likewise give dependable insurance; for instance, somebody who recuperates from measles is presently ensured against measles for their lifetime. In obtained resistance, pathogen-particular receptors are "procured" amid the lifetime of the living being. The procured

reaction is additionally called as "versatile" on the grounds that it readies the body's insusceptible framework for future difficulties. Obtained resistance is activated when a pathogen dodges the inborn insusceptible framework and creates a limit level of antigen likewise produces "outsider" or "threat" signals enacting dendritic cells.

The significant elements of the procured safe framework include:

- Recognition of particular "non-self" antigens within the sight of "self", amid the procedure of antigen introduction.
- Generation of reactions that are custom fitted to maximally dispose of particular pathogens or pathogen-contaminated cells.
- Development of immunological memory, in which pathogens are "recollected" through memory B cells and memory T cells.

Adaptive immune responses can be divided into humoral and cell-mediated responses.

**HUMORAL IMMUNE RESPONSE:** Humoral resistance is that piece of insusceptibility which is intervened by macromolecules found in extracellular liquids, for example, discharged antibodies, supplement proteins, and certain antimicrobial peptides. Humoral insusceptibility is so named in light of the fact that it includes substances found in the humors, or body liquids. Humoral resistance alludes to counter acting agent creation and the extra procedures that go with it, including: Th2 actuation and cytokine generation, germinal focus arrangement and isotype exchanging, proclivity development and memory cell age. It likewise alludes to the effector elements of antibodies, which incorporate pathogen and poison balance, established supplement enactment, and opsonin advancement of phagocytosis and pathogen end. Versatile invulnerability that alludes to antigen-particular segments coursing through the plasma, for example, antibodies, their capacity, and the cells that create them. B cells, sort 2 partner T cells, antibodies, pole cells, and eosinophils are associated with the humoral insusceptible reaction.

Humoral insusceptibility alludes to the part of the versatile resistant reaction that is caused by B cells, antibodies, and sort 2 partner T cells (Th2), and also circling pole

cells and eosinophils to a lesser degree. Its name originates from the possibility that blood is one of the humors of the body, since antibodies give latent or dynamic resistance through flow in the circulation system. Sort 2 partner T cells are incorporated into the humoral resistant framework since they exhibit antigens to youthful B-cells, which experience expansion to end up noticeably particular to the displayed antigen. The B cells at that point quickly create an expansive number of antibodies that circle through the body's plasma.

Antibodies give various capacities in humoral insusceptibility. Six unique classes of antibodies give particular capacities and collaborate with various cells in the resistant framework. All antibodies tie to pathogens to opsonize them, which makes it simpler for phagocytic cells to tie to and devastate the pathogen. They likewise kill the poisons delivered by specific pathogens and give supplement pathway actuation, in which flowing proteins are joined in a perplexing course that structures a layer assault complex on a pathogen cell film, which lyses the cell.

Pole cells and eosinophils are considered piece of the humoral insusceptible framework since they can be sharpened towards specific antigens through coursing immunoglobulin E (IgE), a particular sort of immunizer delivered by B cells. IgE ties to the pole cells and eosinophils when an antigen is identified, utilizing a sort of Fc receptor on the pole cell or eosinophil that has a high-restricting fondness with IgE. This coupling will cause degranulation and arrival of provocative go betweeners that begin an invulnerable reaction against the antigen. This procedure is the motivation behind why memory B cells can cause touchiness (hypersensitivity) development, as circling IgE from those memory cells will actuate a quick provocative and invulnerable respons

**CELL-INTERVENED REACTIONS:** Adaptive invulnerability that isn't controlled by antibodies and is rather interceded specifically by insusceptible cells themselves, most eminently sort 1 aide T cells and cytotoxic T-cells. The cell of the obtained insusceptible framework is T lymphocytes; T cells are the real sorts of lymphocytes. The human body has around 2 trillion lymphocytes, constituting 20– 40% of white platelets (WBCs). B T cells are gotten from the same multi-strong hematopoietic undifferentiated organisms, and are morphologically vague from each other until after



they are actuated, T cells are personally associated with cell-interceded insusceptible reactions. Sort 1 aide T cells and cytotoxic T-cells are associated with cell-interceded invulnerable reaction. Cell intervened resistance is controlled by sort 1 partner T cells (Th1) and cytotoxic T cells. These cells are enacted by antigen-exhibiting cells, which make them quickly develop into frames particular to that antigen. White blood cells at that point course through the body to pulverize pathogens in a few ways. Aide T cells encourage the insusceptible reaction by directing cytotoxic T cells to pathogens or pathogen-tainted cells, which they will then pulverize.

Cytotoxic T cells murder pathogens in a few ways, including the arrival of granules that contain the cytotoxins, perforin and granzyme, which lyse little pores in the layer of a pathogen. At that point T-cell delivered proteases enter the pathogen and actuate an apoptosis reaction inside the cell. Assistant T cells discharge cytokines, for example, interferon-gamma, which can enact cytotoxic T cells and macrophages.

---

### 3.7 ACTIVE IMMUNITY

---

Dynamic immunity alludes to the way toward presenting the body to an antigen to create a versatile invulnerable reaction: the reaction takes days/weeks to grow yet might be durable—even deep rooted. Dynamic invulnerability is the protection created by a person because of an antigenic boost. This includes the dynamic working of the host's safe framework prompting the blend of antibodies and the creation of immunologically dynamic cells. Dynamic invulnerability sets in after an inert period which is required for the immunological hardware to gets under way. Once created dynamic invulnerability is long standing. On the off chance that a person who has been effectively vaccinated against an antigen is presented to same antigen once more, the resistant reactions happen rapidly and plentifully than amid the principal experience. This is known as auxiliary reaction. Dynamic invulnerability is related with immunological memory. This implies the insusceptible framework can hold for long stretches the memory of earlier antigenic introduction. Dynamic insusceptibility gives better insurance then uninvolved resistance. Dynamic resistance can be characteristic or simulated.

**Natural dynamic insusceptibility** comes about because of either a clinical or an in

evident contamination by a microorganism. Such resistance is generally enduring however the length fluctuates with the kind of pathogen. Invulnerability is long lasting after viral illnesses like measles and chickenpox. In flu insusceptibility is fleeting because of antigenic variety, to resistance following the principal disease isn't compelling against second contamination caused by hostile to genically novel infection. In syphilis, an uncommon sort of invulnerability known as 'premunity' is seen. Here, the insusceptibility to re-disease endures just as long as unique contamination stays dynamic.

**Artificial dynamic immunity** is the protection incited by the immunizations. Antibodies are arrangements of live or executed microorganisms or their items utilized for vaccination.

---

### 3.8 PASSIVE RESISTANCE

---

Passive immunity alludes to the way toward giving IgG antibodies to secure against disease; it gives quick, however fleeting insurance—a little while to 3 or 4 months at most. Detached invulnerability is the protection transmitted inactively to a person in a 'readymade' shape. There is no antigenic jolt; rather, preformed antibodies are directed. There is no inactive period, assurance being taking effect right now. The invulnerability is transient, no optional reaction in aloof resistance. It is less successful than dynamic vaccination. The fundamental favorable position of uninvolved vaccination is that it demonstrates promptly and, along these lines, can be utilized when quick impact is wanted, for instance against diphtheritic serum given to a youngster giving diphtheria.

**Natural detached immunity** is the protection latently exchanged from mother to infant. In the human newborn children, maternal antibodies are transmitted dominantly through the placenta. It is just by the age of three months that the newborn child obtains some measure of immunological freedom.

**Artificial detached immunity** is the protection inactively exchanged to a beneficiary by the organization of antibodies. The specialists utilized for this reason for existing are hyperimmune sera of creature or human starting point (Anti lockjaw serum, ATS,

arranged from hyperimmune steeds) and pooled human gamma-globulin (lockjaw resistant globulin, TIG).

Some of the time a blend of dynamic and inactive inoculation is utilized, known as consolidated vaccination. For instance, security of a nonimmune individual with a lockjaw inclined injury (both TIG and Tetanus toxoid is given).

---

### 3.9 SUMMARY

---

Immunity is the condition of insurance against outside living beings or substances (antigens). Vertebrates have two sorts of invulnerability, inborn and versatile. Intrinsic and versatile resistance work in agreeable and reliant ways. The enactment of inborn insusceptible reactions produces flags that animate and direct consequent versatile safe reactions. Intrinsic resistance isn't particular to any one pathogen yet rather constitutes a first line of guard, which incorporates anatomic, physiologic, endocytic and phagocytic, and provocative boundaries. Versatile safe reactions display four immunologic characteristics: specificity, assorted variety, memory, and self/non-self acknowledgment. The high level of specificity in versatile resistance emerges from the exercises of particles (antibodies and T-cell receptors) that perceive and tie particular antigens. The insusceptible framework produces both humoral and cell-interceded reactions. The humoral reaction is most appropriate for end of exogenous antigens; the cell-intervened reaction, for end of endogenous antigens. Procured invulnerability is the protection that an individual secures amid life. Gained invulnerability is of two sorts: Active insusceptibility is the protection created by a person because of an antigenic jolt. Latent insusceptibility is the protection transmitted inactively to a person in a 'readymade' shape. Both can be subdivided into common and manufactured.

---

### 3.10 GLOSSARY

---

**Adjuvant:** Any substance which nonspecifically enhances the immune response to antigen.

**Allergen:** An antigen which causes allergy.

**Allergy:** IgE-mediated hypersensitivity.

**Antigen:** Any molecule capable of being recognized by an antibody or T-cell receptor

**Apoptosis:** A form of programmed cell death, characterized by endonuclease digestion of DNA.

**Basophil:** A type of granulocyte found in the blood and resembling the tissue mast cell.

**Cell-mediated immunity (CMI):** Refers to T-cell mediated immune responses.

**Chemotaxis:** Movement of cells up a concentration gradient of chemotactic factors.

**Complement:** A group of serum proteins, some of which act in an enzymatic cascade, producing effector molecules involved in inflammation, phagocytosis and cell lysis.

**Cytokines:** Low molecular weight proteins that stimulate or inhibit the differentiation, proliferation or function of immune cells.

**Cytotoxic:** Kills cells.

**Edema:** Swelling caused by accumulation of fluid in the tissues.

**Eosinophil:** A class of granulocyte, the granules of which contain toxic cationic proteins.

**Erythema:** The redness produced during inflammation due to erythrocytes entering tissue spaces.

**Exudate:** The extravascular fluid (containing proteins and cellular debris) which accumulates during inflammation.

**Fibroblast:** Connective tissue cell which produces collagen and plays an important part in wound healing.

**Granulocyte:** Myeloid cells containing cytoplasmic granules i.e. neutrophils, eosinophils and basophils.

**Humoral:** Pertaining to extracellular fluid such as plasma and lymph. The term humoral immunity is used to denote antibody-mediated immune responses.

**Immunogen:** Any substance which elicits an immune response.

**Inflammation:** The tissue response to trauma, characterized by increased blood flow and entry of leukocytes into the tissues, resulting in swelling, redness, elevated temperature and pain.

**Innate immunity:** Immunity which is not intrinsically affected by prior contact with

antigen, i.e. all aspects of immunity not directly mediated by lymphocytes.

**Kupffer cells:** Fixed tissue macrophages lining the blood sinuses in the liver.

**Leukocyte:** White blood cells, which include neutrophils, basophils, eosinophils, lymphocytes and monocytes.

**Lymph:** The tissue fluid which drains into and through the lymphatic system.

**Macrophage:** Large phagocytic cell, derived from the blood monocyte.

**Mast cell:** A tissue cell with abundant granules which resembles the blood basophil

**Opsonin:** Substance, which enhances phagocytosis by promoting adhesion of the antigen to the phagocyte.

**Opsonization:** Coating of antigen with opsonin to enhance phagocytosis

**Phagocyte:** Cells, including monocytes/macrophages and neutrophils, which are specialized for the engulfment of cellular and particulate matter.

**Primary immune response:** The relatively weak immune response which occurs upon the first encounter of naive lymphocytes with a given antigen

**Secondary immune response:** The qualitatively and quantitatively improved immune response which occurs upon the second encounter of primed lymphocytes with a given antigen

---

### 3.11 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTION AND POSSIBLE ANSWERS

---

#### Multiple Choice Questions:

- (1) Which of the following does **not** protect body surfaces:
  - (a) Skin
  - (b) Mucus
  - (c) Gastric acid
  - (d) Salivary amylase
- 2) Acute inflammation characteristically involves:
  - (a) Constriction of arterioles.
  - (b) Capillary endothelial cell enlargement
  - (c) Influx of macrophages
  - (d) Influx of neutrophils
- 3) Lysozyme:
  - (a) Is a cytoplasmic organelle
  - (b) Activates complement
  - (c) Is a proteolytic enzyme
  - (d) Splits peptidoglycan

## 4) Interferons:

- (a) Are found only in mammalian species      (b) Are divided into 5 main families
- (c) Induce enzyme synthesis in the target cell      (d) Only affect infected cells

## 5) Natural killer (NK) cells do not:

- (a) Respond to interferon      (b) Contain perforin
- (c) Contain tumor necrosis factor (TNF).      (d) Kill only by damaging the target cell outer membrane

**Answers:**

- 1) Salivary amylase      2) Influx of neutrophils
- 3) Splits peptidoglycan      4) Induce enzyme synthesis in the target cell.
- 5) Kill only by damaging the target cell outer membrane

**Fill in the blanks:**

1. Humoral immunity is mediated by antibodies from \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Cell mediated immunity is mediated by \_\_\_\_\_s.
3. Adaptive immune system provides \_\_\_\_\_ & \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ are low molecular weight cytokines important in inflammation.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ are not part of innate immune response.

**Answer:**

1. B lymphocytes.      2. T lymphocytes.
3. Specificity & memory.      4. Chemokines
5. B cells

**Short Answer Type Questions:**

1. Maternal antibodies transferred to foetus through placenta provide which type of immunity?

Ans. Natural passive immunity

2. Name phagocytic cells?

Ans. Neutrophils, Macrophages & Histiocytes.

3. Define Natural killer cells in one sentence?

Ans. The cells which are able to kill virus-infected cells without prior sensitization.

4. What are the three main functions of complement system?

Ans. Promote inflammation, opsonisation & cell lysis.

5. A primary immune response in an adult human requires approximately how much time to produce detectable antibody levels in the blood?

Ans. It requires one week time to produce detectable antibody levels in blood.

### Long Answers Type Questions

1. What are the differences between active and passive immunity? Describe with examples?
2. Explain innate immunity & its types with examples?
3. What is humoral immunity explain?
4. Describe working of Cell mediated immunity with suitable examples?
5. Explain adaptive immunity & its types with examples?

---

## 3.12 REFERENCES

---

Kind, Thomas J., Goldsby, Richard A., Osborne, Barbara Anne. and Kuby, Janis. (2007). Kuby Immunology. New York: W.H. Freeman  
Lydyard, P.M., Whelan, A. and Fanger, M.W. (2004). Immunology. Garland Science/BIOS Scientific Publishers Limited.

Stvrtinova, Viera, Jan Jakubovsky, Ivan Hulin (1995). Inflammation and Fever from Pathophysiology: Principles of Disease. Computing Centre, Slovak Academy of Sciences: Academic Electronic Press.



---

## **UNIT:4 CELLS & ORGANS OF THE IMMUNE SYSTEM**

---

### **CONTENTS**

- 4.1 Objective
- 4.2 Introduction
- 4.3 Organs of immune system
  - 4.3.1 Primary Lymphoid organs
  - 4.3.2 Secondary Lymphoid organs
  - 4.3.3 Lymphatic system
- 4.4 Summary
- 4.5 Glossary
- 4.6 Self assessment question and answers
- 4.7 References

---

## 4.1 OBJECTIVES

---

- To list the types of cells & organs of the immune system
- To describe the concepts of primary lymphoid organs
- To explain the mechanism of lymphatic system
- To explain the secondary lymphoid organs

---

## 4.2 INTRODUCTION

---

The immune system is a host resistance framework involving numerous natural structures and procedures inside a life form that ensures against malady. To work legitimately, an insusceptible framework must identify a wide assortment of specialists, known as pathogens, infections, parasitic worms, and recognize them from the creature's own sound tissue. The insusceptible framework comprises of a wide range of organs and tissues that are situated all through the body. They are called lymphoid organs since they are home to lymphocytes, little white platelets that are the key players in the insusceptible framework and convey by means of the circulatory frameworks (blood and lymph). The safeguard arrangement of the human body is comprised of whole organs and vessel frameworks like the lymph vessels, yet additionally of individual cells and proteins.

The lymphatic framework is a piece of the circulatory framework, containing a system of conductors called lymphatic vessels that convey reasonable liquid, called lymph, unidirectional towards the heart. The lymphatic framework has different interrelated capacities including the transportation of white platelets to and from the lymph hubs into the bones, and the transportation of antigen-introducing cells, (for example, dendritic cells) to the lymph hubs where an invulnerable reaction is invigorated. Lymphoid tissue is found in numerous organs, especially the lymph hubs. A liquid called lymph, (lymph = clear liquid) streams in lymphatic vessels,

lymphatic tissue and red bone marrow. Liquid sift through of vessels and channels into lymphatic vessels to wind up lymph. The substance of lymph is the same as interstitial liquid, the liquid around tissue cells. Lymph in the long run depletes into venous blood. Lymph channels interstitial liquid, transports dietary lipids and encourages insusceptible reactions. Lymphoid organs shape some portion of the body's resistant framework. As blood circles under weight, its liquid part (plasma) leaks through the thin mass of the vessels into the encompassing tissue. A lot of this liquid, called interstitial liquid, comes back to the blood through the fine layers. The rest of the interstitial liquid, now called lymph, streams from the spaces in connective tissue into a system of modest open lymphatic vessels and afterward into a progression of dynamically bigger gathering vessels called lymphatic vessels.

Lymphoid organs safeguard the body against attacking pathogens that reason diseases or spread of tumors. These organs exist as essential, auxiliary or tertiary, in view of the phase of lymphocyte improvement and development the organ is associated with. These organs comprise of connective tissues with various sorts of leukocytes or white platelets. Lymphocytes typically show the most elevated rate among these white platelets paying little heed to the sort of lymphoid organ (i.e. essential, optional or tertiary).

Various morphologically and practically different organs and tissues have different capacities in the improvement of safe reactions. These can be recognized by work as the essential and optional lymphoid organs. The thymus and bone marrow are the essential lymphoid organs, where development of lymphocytes happens. The lymph hubs, spleen, and different mucosal related lymphoid tissues (MALT, for example, gut-related lymphoid tissue (GALT) are the auxiliary (or fringe) lymphoid organs, which trap antigen and give destinations to develop lymphocytes to cooperate with that antigen. Moreover, tertiary lymphoid tissues, which ordinarily contain less lymphoid cells than optional lymphoid organs.

---

## 4.3 ORGANS OF IMMUNE SYSTEM

---

---

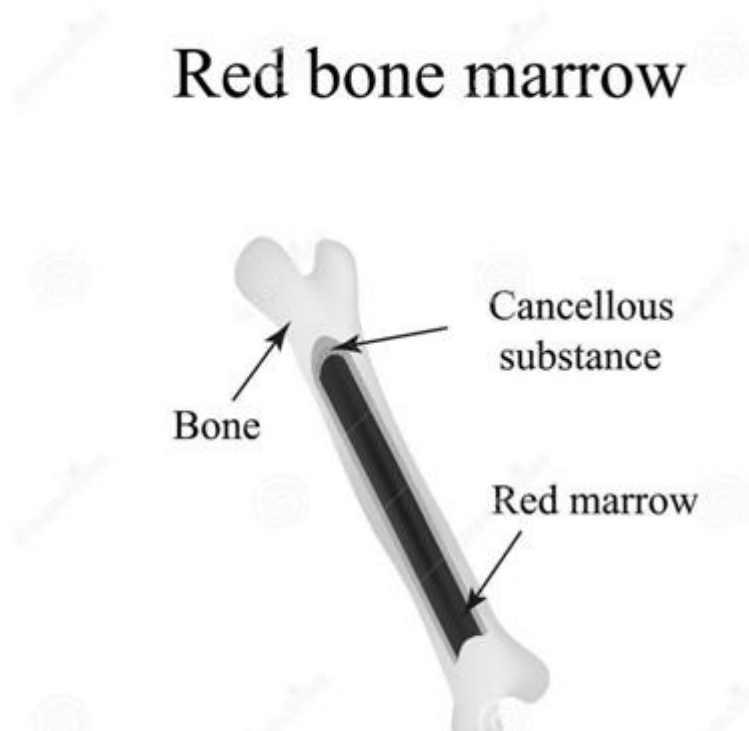
### 4.3.1 PRIMARY LYMPHOID ORGANS

---

The essential lymphoid organs produce lymphocytes from youthful forebear cells. There are two essential lymphatic organs, the red bone marrow and the thymus organ, where development of lymphocytes happens.

**1) Bone marrow:** Bone marrow is the light and adaptable tissue inside in the inside of bones, including the hip and thigh bones. Bone marrow contains juvenile cells, called undifferentiated organisms. In people, red platelets are created by centers of bone marrow in the heads of long bones in a procedure known as hematopoiesis. The hematopoietic part of bone marrow creates roughly 500 billion platelets for every day and it is additionally a key segment of the lymphatic framework, delivering the lymphocytes that help the body's insusceptible framework. The two sorts of bone marrow are "red marrow" (Latin: medulla ossium rubra), which comprises predominantly of hematopoietic tissue, and "yellow marrow" (Latin: medulla ossium flava), which is for the most part comprised of fat cells. Red platelets, platelets, and most white platelets emerge in red marrow. The two sorts of bone marrow contain various veins and vessels. During childbirth, all bone marrow is red. With age, increasingly of it is changed over to the yellow sort; just around half of grown-up bone marrow is red. Red marrow is discovered primarily in the level bones, for example, the pelvis, sternum, noggin, ribs, vertebrae and scapulae, and in the cancellous ("elastic") material at the epiphyseal closures of long bones, for example, the femur and humerus. Yellow marrow is found in the medullary pit, the empty inside of the center segment of short bones. In instances of serious blood misfortune, the body can change over yellow marrow back to red marrow to build platelet generation. The bone marrow contains hematopoietic foundational microorganisms, which offer ascent to the three classes of platelets that are found in the course: white platelets (leukocytes), red platelets (erythrocytes), and platelets (thrombocytes). Both

T-cell and B-cells are 'conceived' in the bone marrow. In any case, while B cells additionally develop in the bone marrow, T-cells need to move to the thymus, which is the place they develop in the thymus.



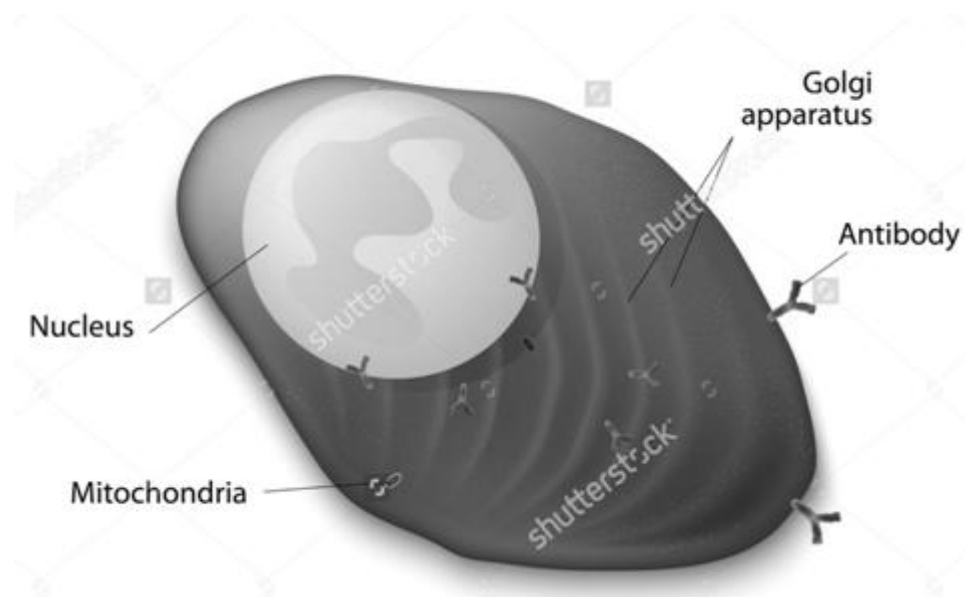
*Fig.4.1 Red bone marrow*

**2) B Lymphocytes:** B cells, otherwise called B lymphocytes, are a sort of white platelet of the lymphocyte subtype; B cells develop in the bone marrow, which is at the center of generally bones. In feathered creatures, B cells develop in the **Bursa of Fabricius**, a lymphoid organ thus named B lymphocytes. They work in the humoral invulnerability part of the versatile safe framework by emitting antibodies. B cells display antigen i.e. antigen-introducing cells (APCs) and emit cytokines. B cells, not at all like the other two classes of lymphocytes, T cells and common executioner cells, express B cell receptors (BCRs) on their cell film. BCRs enable the B cell to tie a particular antigen, against which it will start a counter acting agent reaction. B cells create from hematopoietic undifferentiated organisms (HSCs) that begin from bone marrow. HSCs first separate into multipotent forebear (MPP) cells, at that point normal lymphoid begetter (CLP) cells. From here, their advancement into B cells happens in a few phases.

For finish advancement, youthful B cells relocate from the bone marrow to the spleen and in addition go through two transitional stages: T1 and T2. All through their relocation to the spleen and after spleen section, they are viewed as T1 B cell. Once separated, they are called as develop B cells, or gullible B cells. They have an exceptional antigen restricting site or receptor mIGM (layer immuno globulin). B cell comprise of two indistinguishable overwhelming and light fastened polypeptide which are connected by disulphide bond. The carboxylic terminal end of both light and substantial chain included a separated inside which antigen ties. B cell initiation happens in the optional lymphoid organs (SLOs, for example, the spleen and lymph hubs. After B cells develop in the bone marrow, they relocate through the blood to SLOs, which get a steady supply of antigen through flowing lymph. At the SLO, B cell actuation starts when the B cell ties to an antigen through its BCR. In the wake of communicating with the antigen it separate into fleeting plasmablasts for quick insurance and extensive plasma cells and memory B cells for relentless assurance.

**3) B cell types:** B cells are of following types depending on the size & nature of work they perform.

**4) Plasma cell:** An extensive, non-multiplying counter acting agent emitting cell emerging from B cell separation. There B cells initially separate into a plasma-impact like cell, at that point separate into a plasma cell. Plasma cells are created later in a disease and, contrasted with plasmablasts, have antibodies with a higher liking towards their objective antigen because of proclivity development in the germinal focus (GC) and deliver more antibodies. Plasma cells regularly result from the germinal focus response from T cell-subordinate initiation of B cells, be that as it may they can likewise come about because of T cell-autonomous enactment of B cells. Neutralizer discharging plasma cells free receptors and develop into extensive size with huge number of E.R. and begin decreasing antibodies which are connected in free course. Plasma cells are called manufacturing plants creating substantial number of antibodies; they can discharge as much as 2000 antibodies particles for every second and life expectancy is just for few days.



*Fig 4.2 Structure of plasma Cell*

**5) Memory B cell:** Lethargic B cell emerging from B cell separation. Their capacity is to circle through the body and start a more grounded, more quick neutralizer reaction (known as the optional immune response reaction) in the event that they recognize the antigen that had initiated their parent B cell (memory B cells and their parent B cells share the same BCR, subsequently they distinguish a similar antigen). Memory B cells can be produced from T cell-subordinate actuation through both the additional follicular reaction and the germinal focus response and from T cell-free initiation of B1 cells. Memory cells just deliver immune response for articulation on their cell surface, their life span is relatively long to plasma cells.

**6) Plasmablast:** A brief, multiplying counter acting agent discharging cell emerging from B cell separation. Plasmablasts are created right on time in a disease and their antibodies have a tendency to have a weaker proclivity towards their objective antigen contrasted with plasma cell. Plasmablasts can come about because of T cell-free enactment of B cells or the extrafollicular reaction from T cell-subordinate actuation of B cells.

**7) Follicular (FO) B cell:** Otherwise called a B-2 cell, most normal sort of B cell and, when not circling through the blood, is discovered primarily in the lymphoid follicles of optional lymphoid organs (SLOs). They are in charge of creating the lion's

share of high-proclivity antibodies amid a disease.

**8) Marginal zone (MZ) B cell:** Discovered essentially in the negligible zone of the spleen and fills in as a first line of resistance against blood-borne pathogens, as the peripheral zone gets a lot of blood from the general dissemination. They can experience both T cell-autonomous and T cell-subordinate actuation, however specially experience T cell-free enactment.

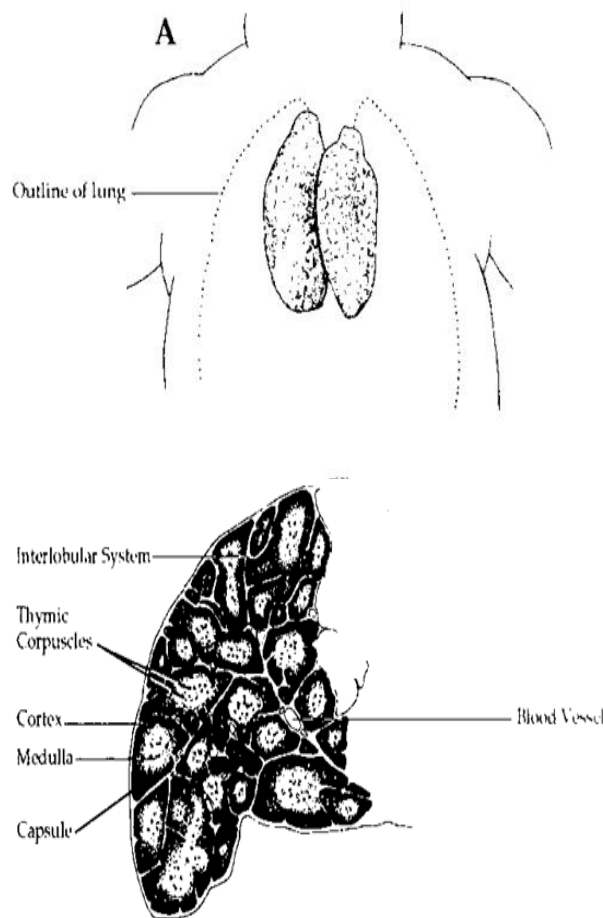
**9) B-1 cell:** Arises from a developmental pathway different from FO B cells and MZ B cells.

**10) Regulatory B (Breg) cell:** An immunosuppressive B cell sort that stops the extension of pathogenic, master fiery lymphocytes through the discharge of IL-10, IL-35, and TGF- $\beta$ . Additionally, it advances the age of administrative T (Treg) cells by straightforwardly communicating with T cells to skew their separation towards Tregs. All B cell sorts can separate into a Breg cell through instruments including fiery signs and BCR acknowledgment.

**11) Thymus gland:** The thymus is a particular essential lymphoid organ of the invulnerable framework, it is found anatomically in the foremost unrivaled mediastinum, before the heart and behind the sternum. The thymus is a pinkish-dark shading, delicate, and lobulated structure, during childbirth it is around 5 cm long, 4 cm in broadness, and around 6 mm in thickness. The organ grows amid adolescence, and decays at pubescence and in grown-ups it is yellow. It is inside zonated into numerous lobules which are isolated from each other by connective tissue strand called Trabeculae. Every lobule comprise of focal medulla and external cortex. Inside the thymus, T cells or T lymphocytes develop, the cortex and medulla assume distinctive parts in the advancement of T-cells. The thymus gives an inductive domain to improvement of T cells from hematopoietic ancestor cell, it is biggest and most dynamic amid the neonatal and pre-immature periods. The cortex is the area of the most punctual occasions in thymocyte improvement and is chiefly made out of lymphocytes. In medulla partition, the lymphoid cells are generally less in number and the area of the last occasions in thymocyte improvement. The two fundamental segments of the thymus, the lymphoid thymocytes and the thymic epithelial cells,



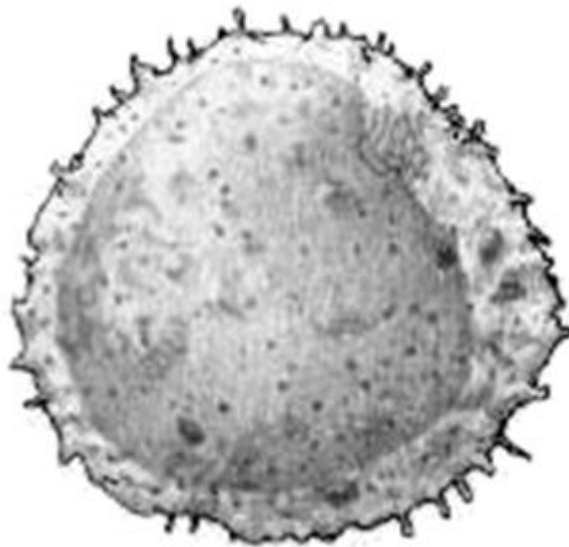
have particular formative inceptions. The two fundamental segments of the thymus, the lymphoid thymocytes and the thymic epithelial cells, have particular formative inceptions. The begetter T cells enter the thymus and begin multiplying inside the cortex, which is combined with Apoptosis, at that point a little extent of surviving T cells, relocate to medulla where they keep on maturing and at last leave the thymus. Thymus is made out of system of stromal cells, epithelial cells, interdigitating dendritic cells and macrophages which contribute for the development of thymocytes.



*Fig 4.3 Structure of Thymus Gland*

**12) T Lymphocytes:** T lymphocytes infer their name since they develop in the thymus from thymocytes. A T cell, or T lymphocyte, is a kind of lymphocyte (a subtype of white platelet) that assumes a focal part in cell-interceded invulnerability. Immune system microorganisms can be recognized from different lymphocytes, for example, B cells and common executioner cells, by the nearness of a T-cell receptor

on the cell surface. Immune system microorganisms can be recognized from different lymphocytes, for example, B cells and regular executioner cells, by the nearness of a T-cell receptor on the cell surface. All T cells begin from haematopoietic undifferentiated organisms in the bone marrow. Haematopoietic begetters (lymphoid forebear cells) from haematopoietic undifferentiated cells populate the thymus and extend by cell division to produce a substantial populace of juvenile thymocytes. A one of a kind component of T cells is their capacity to separate amongst solid and unusual (e.g. contaminated or harmful) cells in the body. Like B lymphocytes, these cells have layer receptors for antigen. In spite of the fact that the antigen restricting T-cell receptor is basically unmistakable from immunoglobulin, it shares some regular basic highlights with the immunoglobulin particle, most prominently in the structure of its antigen-restricting site. Not at all like the layer bound immune response on B cells, however, the T-cell receptor (TCR) does not perceive free antigen. Rather the TCR perceives just antigen that is bound to specific classes of self-particles. Most T cells perceive antigen just when it is bound to a self-particle encoded by qualities inside the major histo-similarity complex (MHC). The T cell is confined to restricting antigen showed on self-cells just however to be perceived by most T cells, this antigen must be shown together with MHC particles on the surface of antigen-displaying cells or on infection contaminated cells, tumor cells, and unions. The T-cell framework has created to dispense with these modified self-cells, which represent a danger to the ordinary working of the body. Like B cells, T cells express unmistakable film atoms. All T-cell subpopulations express the T-cell receptor, a complex of polypeptides that incorporates CD3; and most can be recognized by the nearness of either of two film particles, CD4 and CD8. The capacity of T cells to overlook solid cells yet react when these same cells contain pathogen (or tumor) determined pMHC is known as antigen segregation.



*Fig 4.4 Structure of Lymphocytes*

**13) T cell types:** The types of T cell is as mentioned below:

**a. Effector cells:** The classification of effector T cell is an expansive one that incorporates different T cell sorts that effectively react to a jolt, for example, co-incitement. This incorporates partner, executioner, administrative, and conceivably other T cell sorts.

**b. Helper cells ( $T_H$  cells):** T-aide cells help other white platelets in immunologic procedures, including development of B cells into plasma cells and memory B cells, and initiation of cytotoxic T cells and macrophages. These cells are otherwise called  $CD4^+$  T cells since they express the CD4 glycoprotein on their surfaces. Aide T cells end up plainly actuated when they are given peptide antigens by MHC class II atoms, which are communicated on the surface of antigen-exhibiting cells (APCs). Once initiated, they isolate quickly and discharge little proteins called cytokines that control or aid the dynamic insusceptible reaction. These cells can separate into one of a few subtypes, including  $TH1$ ,  $TH2$ ,  $TH3$ ,  $TH17$ ,  $TH9$ , or  $TFH$ , which discharge distinctive cytokines to encourage diverse sorts of insusceptible reactions. Motioning from the APC coordinates T cells into specific subtypes.

**c. Cytotoxic/killer cells ( $T_C$  cells):** Cytotoxic T cells otherwise called TC cells, CTLs, T-executioner cells, executioner T cells devastate infection contaminated cells

and tumor cells, and are additionally ensnared in transplant dismissal. These cells are otherwise called CD8<sup>+</sup> T cells since they express the CD8 glycoprotein at their surfaces. These cells perceive their objectives by authoritative to antigen related with MHC class I particles, which are available on the surface of every single nucleated cell. Through IL-10, adenosine, and different atoms emitted by administrative T cells, the CD8<sup>+</sup> cells can be inactivated to an anergic state, which avoids immune system illnesses.

**d. Memory cells:** Memory T cells are a subset of antigen-particular T cells that persevere long haul after a disease has settled. They rapidly extend to substantial quantities of effector T cells upon re-presentation to their related antigen, therefore furnishing the insusceptible framework with "memory" against past diseases. Memory cells might be either CD4<sup>+</sup> or CD8<sup>+</sup>. Memory T cells ordinarily express the cell surface protein CD45RO. Memory T cells involve three subtypes; focal memory T cells (TCM cells), effector memory T cells (TEM cells and TEMRA cells) and occupant memory T cells (TRM).

**e. Natural killer T cell:** Natural killer T cells (NKT cells) ought not to be mistaken for common killer cells of the intrinsic immune system which connect the versatile immune network with the natural insusceptible framework. Dissimilar to regular T cells that perceive peptide antigens displayed by major histo-similarity complex (MHC) atoms, NKT cells perceive glycol-lipid antigen exhibited by a particle called CD1d. Once enacted, these cells can perform capacities credited to both Th and Tc cells (i.e., cytokine creation and arrival of cytolytic/cell murdering atoms). They are likewise ready to perceive and take out some tumor cells and cells tainted with herpes infections.

**f. Gamma delta T cells:** Gamma delta T cells ( $\gamma\delta$  T cells) speak to a little subset of T cells that have a particular T cell receptor (TCR) on their surfaces. A dominant part of T cells have a TCR made out of two glycoprotein chains called  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -TCR chains. Notwithstanding, in  $\gamma\delta$  T cells, the TCR is comprised of one  $\gamma$ -chain and one  $\delta$ -chain. This gathering of T cells is significantly less regular in people (around 2% of aggregate T cells); and are discovered generally in the gut mucosa, inside a populace of lymphocytes known as intraepithelial lymphocytes. Be that as it may,  $\gamma\delta$  T cells are

not MHC-confined and appear to have the capacity to perceive entire proteins instead of expecting peptides to be introduced by MHC particles on APCs. Some murine  $\gamma\delta$  T cells perceive MHC class IB particles, however. Human  $V\gamma 9/V\delta 2$  T cells, which constitute the major  $\gamma\delta$  T cell populace in fringe blood, are exceptional in that they particularly and quickly react to an arrangement of nonpeptidic phosphorylated isoprenoid antecedents, all things considered named phosphoantigens, which are delivered by for all intents and purposes every living cell.

---

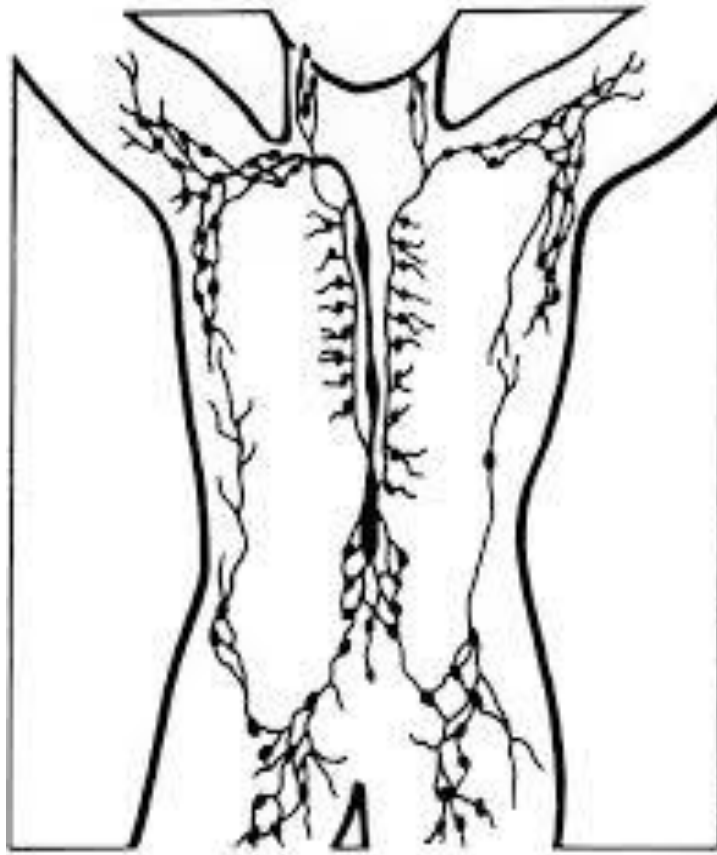
### 5.3.2 SECONDARY LYMPHOID ORGANS

---

Optional or fringe lymphoid organs, which incorporate lymph hubs and the spleen, keep up develop credulous lymphocytes and start a versatile invulnerable reaction. The fringe lymphoid organs are the locales of lymphocyte actuation by antigens. Actuation prompts clonal extension and partiality development. Develop lymphocytes re-flow between the blood and the fringe lymphoid organs until the point that they experience their particular antigen. Auxiliary lymphoid tissue gives nature to the remote or adjusted local particles (antigens) to connect with the lymphocytes. Auxiliary lymphoid tissues are orchestrated as a progression of channels checking the substance of the extracellular liquids, i.e. lymph, tissue liquid and blood. The lymphoid tissue sifting each of these liquids is organized in various ways. Optional lymphoid tissues are additionally where lymphocytes are actuated. These include: lymph hubs, tonsils, spleen, Peyer's patches and mucosa related lymphoid tissue (MALT).

**1. Lymph nodes:** A lymph hub is an oval-or kidney-formed organ of the lymphatic framework, exhibit broadly all through the body including the armpit and stomach and connected by lymphatic vessels. Lymph hubs are real destinations of B, T, and other invulnerable cells. Lymph hubs are imperative for the best possible working of the resistant framework, going about as channels for outside particles and disease cells. A lymph hub is a sorted out accumulation of lymphoid tissue, through which the lymph passes on its way back to the blood. Lymph hubs are situated at interims along the lymphatic framework. A few afferent lymph vessels get lymph, which permeates through the substance of the lymph hub, and is then depleted out by an

efferent lymph vessel. There are in the vicinity of five and six hundred lymph hubs in the human body, huge numbers of which are gathered in bunches in various districts as in the underarm and stomach regions. Lymph hub groups are generally found at the base of appendages (crotch, armpits) and in the neck, where lymph is gathered from areas of the body liable to support pathogen tainting from wounds. The substance of a lymph hub comprises of lymphoid follicles in an external segment called the cortex. The inward part of the hub is known as the medulla, which is encompassed by the cortex on all sides with the exception of a bit known as the hilum. The hilum introduces as a misery on the surface of the lymph hub, making the generally round lymph hub be bean-molded or ovoid. The efferent lymph vessel straightforwardly rises up out of the lymph hub at the hilum. The conduits and veins providing the lymph hub with blood enter and exit through the hilum. The district of the lymph hub called the para-cortex quickly encompasses the medulla. Not at all like the cortex, which has generally youthful T cells, or thymocytes, the paracortex has a blend of juvenile and develop T cells. Lymphocytes enter the lymph hubs through specific high endothelial venules found in the paracortex. A lymph follicle is a thick gathering of lymphocytes, the number, size and setup of which change as per the utilitarian condition of the lymph hub. For instance, the follicles extend fundamentally while experiencing an outside antigen. The choice of B cells, or B lymphocytes, happens in the germinal focus of the lymph hubs. Lymph hubs are especially various in the mediastinum in the chest, neck, pelvis, axilla, inguinal locale, and in relationship with the veins of the digestion tracts.



*Fig 4.5 Secondary lymphoid organs*

**Function:** The lymph liquid inside the lymph hubs contains lymphocytes, a kind of white blood cell, which consistently re-circulates through the lymph hubs and the circulation system. Antigens found on microscopic organisms, cell debris or concoction substances discharged from microorganisms, called antigens, might be taken up by devoted antigen-displaying cells, for example, dendritic cells into the lymph framework and afterward into lymph hubs. In light of the antigens, the lymphocytes in the lymph hub make antibodies which will leave the lymph hub into flow, look for, and focus on the pathogens creating the antigens by focusing on them for devastation by different cells. On the off chance that the lymphocytes can't battle a specific pathogen, the general invulnerable framework will be initiated to help. The expanded quantities of resistant framework cells battling the contamination will influence the hub to extend and end up plainly swollen. They end up plainly aroused

or amplified in different contaminations and sicknesses which may go from throat diseases, to perilous growths. The state of the lymph hubs is essential in tumor arranging, which chooses the treatment to be utilized, and decides the anticipation. Whenever swollen, excited or developed, lymph hubs can be hard, firm or delicate. The lymph is sifted by lymph hubs, which are cases of epitomized lymphoid tissue. There are around 100-200 of these which generally happen in the neck, thorax, guts and pelvis. They contain B-and T-cells, which for the most part enter the hubs through the circulatory system, and furthermore contain macrophages.

**2. Spleen:** The spleen is an organ found in all vertebrates. Comparable in structure to an extensive lymph hub, it acts basically as a blood channel. It is a substantial, ovoid optional lymphoid organ arranged high in the left stomach cavity. It is a substantial embodied organ; with external case is fibro-versatile. The diaphragmatic surface of the spleen or phrenic surface is raised, smooth, and is coordinated upward, in reverse, and to one side, with the exception of at its upper end, where it is coordinated marginally to the center. The spleen lies underneath the left stomach, underneath the ninth, tenth, and eleventh ribs. The stomach isolates the spleen from the pleura and base of the left lung. The instinctive surface of the spleen is isolated by an edge into two areas: a foremost or gastric and a back or renal. The gastric surface is coordinated forward, upward, and toward the center, is wide and curved, and is in contact with the back mass of the stomach. Underneath this it is in contact with the tail of the pancreas. The spleen assumes imperative parts as to red platelets (additionally alluded to as erythrocytes) and the safe framework. It expels old red platelets and holds a save of blood, which can be important if there should arise an occurrence of hemorrhagic stun, and furthermore reuses press. As a piece of the mononuclear phagocyte framework, it uses hemoglobin expelled from senescent erythrocytes. The spleen integrates antibodies in its white mash and evacuates counter acting agent covered microbes and immune response covered platelets by method for blood and lymph hub flow. The red mash of the spleen shapes a repository that contains over portion of the body's monocytes. These monocytes, after moving to harmed tissue, (for example, the heart after myocardial dead tissue), transform into dendritic cells and macrophages while advancing tissue recuperating. The spleen is a focal point of action of the mononuclear phagocyte framework and can be viewed as undifferentiated from a



substantial lymph hub. Spleen reaction to orderly contamination since it channels the blood and traps the blood borne antigens. Inside to spleen is compartmentalized structure which is isolated by connective tissue projection called Trabeculae. These compartments are of two sorts; red pulp which is rich in RBCs and macrophages and white pulp which encompasses the corridors framing periautrial lymphatic sheath i.e. PALS and for the most part comprise of T lymphocytes. The negligible zone situated by the PALS is comprised of B cells and macrophages sorted out into lymphoid follicle. Blood going through the spleen will convey antigen and discharge it in the minor zone, in the wake of entering the minimal zone they are caught by dendritic cells which convey the antigen to the PALS.

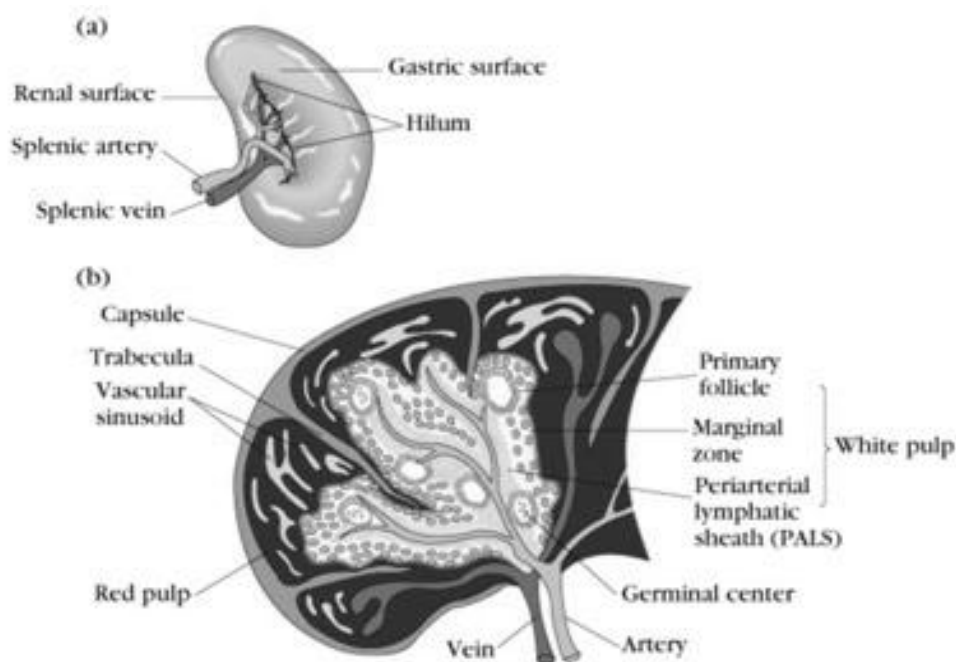


Fig 4.6

**MALT(mucosal associated lymphoid tissues):** The mucosa-related lymphoid tissue (MALT), additionally called mucosa-related lymphatic tissue, is a diffuse arrangement of little groupings of lymphoid tissue found in different sub-mucosa layer destinations of the body, for example, the gastrointestinal tract, thyroid, bosom, lung, salivary organs, eye, and skin. Larger part of lymphoid tissue in human body is

situated inside the mucosal coating of the stomach related, respiratory, and urogenital tract; this is on the grounds that these are principle destinations of passage of antigens. The guard at the surface of mucosal covering is given by a gathering of lymphoid tissues by and large known as MALT. MALT is populated by lymphocytes, for example, T cells and B cells, and in addition plasma cells and macrophages, each of which is all around arranged to experience antigens going through the mucosal epithelium. On account of intestinal MALT, M cells are likewise present, which gather antigen from the lumen and convey it to the lymphoid tissue. Fundamentally, these tissues extend from free, scarcely composed bunches of lymphoid cells in the lamina propria of intestinal villi to efficient structures, for example, the recognizable tonsils and reference section, and additionally Peyer's patches, which are found inside the sub-mucosal layer of the intestinal coating. The practical significance of MALT in the body's guard is by its substantial populace of counter acting agent creating plasma cells, whose number far surpasses that of plasma cells in the spleen, lymph hubs, and bone marrow consolidated.

**3. Tonsils:** Tonsils are the two lymph hubs situated on each side of the back of your throat. These are accumulations of lymphoid tissue looking into the air stomach related tract. Tonsils are extensive somewhat epitomized masses of lymphoid tissue, found in the dividers of the pharynx and naso-pharynx, and at the base of the tongue. They frame a fragmented ring around the gastrointestinal and respiratory tracts, where they traverse .They work as a protection component. They help keep our body from disease. At the point when the tonsils wind up plainly tainted, the condition is called tonsillitis. Tonsils in people incorporate, from foremost (front), unrivaled (top), (back), and substandard (base) i.e. the adenoid tonsil, two tubal tonsils, two palatine tonsils, and the lingual tonsil individually. Tonsils tend to achieve their biggest size close pubescence, and they step by step experience degeneration from that point. These tissues are the invulnerable framework's initially line of resistance against ingested or breathed in outside pathogens. Tonsils have on their surface specific antigen catch cells called M cells that consider the take-up of antigens delivered by pathogens. These M cells at that point alarm the hidden B cells and T cells in the tonsil that a pathogen is available and a resistant reaction is empowered. B cells are initiated and multiply in territories called germinal focuses in the tonsil. These

germinal focuses are places where B memory cells are made and secretory immunizer (IgA) is created. They create white platelets to enable your body to battle contamination. The tonsils battle microscopic organisms and infections that enter your body through your mouth. In any case, tonsils are likewise helpless against contamination from these trespassers. Infections are the most widely recognized reason for tonsillitis.

**4. Peyer's patches:** Peyer's patches additionally named as totaled lymphoid knobs, or PP are composed lymphoid follicles, named after the Swiss anatomist Johann Conrad Peyer. They are vital piece of gut related lymphoid tissue and are huge masses of intersecting lymphoid follicles, found in the dividers of the ileum, some portion of the small digestive system. Peyer's patches are stretched thickenings of the intestinal epithelium around 100 are found in people. Peyer's patches are described by the follicle-related epithelium, which covers each lymphoid follicles. Follicle-related epithelium varies from run of the mill little intestinal villus epithelium: it has less cells along these lines bodily fluid layer is more slender, and it is additionally described by the nearness of particular M cells of Microfold cells, which give take-up and transport of antigens from lumen. The lumen of the gastrointestinal tract is presented to the outer condition; populated with pathogenic microorganisms. Peyer's patches consequently assume an imperative part in the insusceptible control of the intestinal lumen and in encouraging the age of the resistant reaction inside the mucosa. Pathogenic microorganisms and different antigens entering the intestinal tract experience macrophages, dendritic cells, B-lymphocytes, and T-lymphocytes found in Peyer's patches and different destinations of gut-related lymphoid tissue (GALT). Peyer's patches in this manner represent the gastrointestinal framework much as the tonsils represent the respiratory framework, catching outside particles, examining them, and devastating them.

Peyer's patches are secured by an uncommon follicle-related epithelium that contains particular cells called microfold cells (M cells) which gather antigen straightforwardly from the lumen and convey it to antigen-introducing cells. Dendritic cells and macrophages can likewise specifically gather the lumen by expanding dendrites through transcellular M cell-particular pores. In the meantime

the paracellular pathway of follicle-related epithelium is shut firmly to counteract entrance of antigens and persistent contact with invulnerable cells. Immune system microorganisms, B-cells and memory cells are animated after experiencing antigen in Peyer's patches. These cells at that point go to the mesenteric lymph hubs where the insusceptible reaction is intensified. Enacted lymphocytes go into the circulatory system by means of the thoracic channel and go to the gut where they do their last effector capacities. The development of B-lymphocytes happens in the Peyer's fix.

**5. Tertiary lymphoid tissue (TLOs):** It regularly contains far less lymphocytes, and accept an insusceptible part just when tested with antigens that outcome in aggravation. Tertiary lymphoid organs (TLOs) are collections of lymphoid cells in endless irritation that look like LNs in their cell substance and association, high endothelial venules, and lymphatic vessels (LVs). Albeit intense irritation can bring about inadequate LVs, TLO LVs seem to work ordinarily in that they deplete liquid and transport cells that react to chemokines and sphingosine-1-phosphate (S1P) slopes. It accomplishes this by bringing in the lymphocytes from blood and lymph. TLOs, additionally alluded to as ectopic lymphoid tissues, are gatherings of cells in perpetual irritation and are alluded to as tertiary to recognize them from optional lymphoid organs (SLOs). SLOs emerge amid advancement at enter areas in the body under the control of an exact formative program. TLOs are described by their cell, hierarchical, chemokine, and vascular likeness to SLOs, particularly LNs. These similitudes incorporate T and B cell compartmentalization, APCs, for example, DCs and follicular DCs, stromal cells, courses, and a profoundly composed vascular arrangement of HEVs and LVs.

---

### 4.3.3 LYMPHATIC SYSTEM

---

The lymphatic framework is a piece of the circulatory framework and an imperative piece of the invulnerable framework, involving a system of lymphatic vessels that convey unmistakable liquid called lymph towards the heart. The lymphatic framework is a system of tissues and organs that assistance free the group of poisons, squander and other undesirable materials. The essential capacity of the lymphatic framework is to transport lymph, a liquid containing contamination battling white

platelets, all through the body. Lymphatic framework, a subsystem of the circulatory framework in the vertebrate body that comprises of an unpredictable system of vessels, tissues, and organs. The lymphatic framework keeps up liquid adjust in the body by gathering abundance liquid and particulate issue from tissues and saving them in the circulatory system. It additionally guards the body against contamination by providing ailment battling cells called lymphocytes. As blood courses under weight, its liquid segment (plasma) leaks through the thin mass of the vessels into the encompassing tissue. A lot of this liquid, called interstitial liquid, comes back to the blood through the hairlike layers. The rest of the interstitial liquid, now called lymph, streams from the spaces in connective tissue into a system of minor open lymphatic vessels and after that into a progression of continuously bigger gathering vessels called lymphatic vessels. The biggest lymphatic vessel, the thoracic pipe, exhausts into the left subclavian vein close to the heart. Along these lines, the lymphatic framework catches liquid lost from the blood and returns it to the blood, in this way guaranteeing relentless state levels of liquid inside the circulatory framework. The heart does not draw the lymph through the lymphatic framework; rather the stream of lymph is accomplished as the lymph vessels are crushed by developments of the body's muscles. A progression of one-route valves along the lymphatic vessels guarantees that lymph streams just one way. At the point when a remote antigen gets access to the tissues, it is grabbed by the lymphatic framework and is conveyed to different sorted out lymphoid tissues, for example, lymph hubs, which trap the outside antigen. As lymph goes from the tissues to lymphatic vessels, it turns out to be dynamically enhanced in lymphocytes. Along these lines, the lymphatic framework additionally fills in as a methods for transporting lymphocytes and antigen from the connective tissues to sorted out lymphoid tissues where the lymphocytes may collaborate with the caught antigen and experience initiation. The lymphatic framework comprises of lymphatic organs, a leading system of lymphatic vessels, and the circling lymph. Lymphatic tissues start to create before the finish of the fifth seven day stretch of embryonic advancement. Lymphatic vessels create from lymph sacs that emerge from creating veins, which are gotten from mesoderm.

**Function:** The lymphatic framework assumes a noteworthy part in body's safe framework, as the essential site for cells identifying with versatile resistant

framework including T-cells and B-cells. Cells in the lymphatic framework respond to antigens exhibited or found by the cells straightforwardly or by other dendritic cells. At the point when an antigen is perceived, an immunological course starts including the actuation and enrollment of an ever increasing number of cells, the creation of antibodies and cytokines and the enlistment of other immunological cells, for example, macrophages. The lymphatic framework additionally has numerous interrelated capacities, for example, it is in charge of the expulsion of interstitial liquid from tissues, it ingests and transports unsaturated fats and fats as chyle from the stomach related framework, it transports white platelets to and from the lymph hubs into the bones, the lymph transports antigen-exhibiting cells, for example, dendritic cells, to the lymph hubs where a resistant reaction is empowered.

---

#### 4.4 SUMMARY

---

The cells that take part in the safe reaction are white platelets, or leukocytes. The lymphocyte is the main cell to have the immunologic properties of specificity, assorted variety, memory, and self/non-self acknowledgment. Huge numbers of the body's cells, tissues, and organs emerge from the offspring of various immature microorganism populaces. The division of a foundational microorganism can bring about the generation of another undifferentiated organism and a separated cell of a particular sort or gathering. All leukocytes create from a typical multipotent hematopoietic undeveloped cell amid hematopoiesis. Different hematopoietic development factors (cytokines) initiate expansion and separation of the distinctive platelets. The separation of undifferentiated organisms into various cell sorts requires the declaration of various ancestry deciding qualities. Various interpretation factors assume essential parts in such manner. There are three sorts of lymphocytes: B cells, T cells, and common executioner cells (NK cells). NK cells are substantially less plentiful than B and T cells, and most do not have a receptor that is particular for a specific antigen. Be that as it may, a subtype of NK cells, NK1-T cells, have both T-cell receptors and a significant number of the markers normal for NK cells. The three sorts of lymphoid cells are best recognized on the premise of capacity and the nearness of different film atoms. Macrophages and neutrophils are specific for the

phagocytosis and corruption of antigens. Basophils and pole cells are non phagocytic cells that discharge an assortment of pharmacologically dynamic substances and assume critical parts in hypersensitive responses. The essential lymphoid organs give destinations where lymphocytes develop and turn out to be antigenically dedicated. T lymphocytes develop inside the thymus, and B lymphocytes emerge and develop inside the bone marrow of people. Essential lymphoid organs are likewise places of determination where numerous lymphocytes that respond with self antigens are disposed of. Besides, the thymus disposes of thymocytes that would develop into futile T cells in light of the fact that their T-cell receptors can't perceive self-MHC. The lymphatic framework gathers liquid that aggregates in tissue spaces and returns this liquid to the dissemination by means of the left subclavian vein. It additionally conveys antigens to the lymph hubs, which interfere with the course of lymphatic vessels. Auxiliary lymphoid organs catch antigens and give destinations where lymphocytes end up plainly actuated by collaboration with antigens. Actuated lymphocytes experience clonal multiplication and separation into effector cells. There are a few sorts of auxiliary lymphoid tissue: lymph hubs, spleen, the free groups of follicles, and Peyer's patches of the digestive tract, and cutaneous-related lymphoid tissue. Lymph hubs trap antigen from lymph, spleen traps blood-borne antigens, intestinal-related lymphoid tissues (and also other auxiliary lymphoid tissues) cooperate with antigens that enter the body from the gastrointestinal tract, and cutaneous-related lymphoid tissue secures epithelial tissues.

---

## 4.5 GLOSSARY

---

**Apoptosis:** A type of modified cell demise, portrayed by endonuclease assimilation of DNA

**B-1/B-2 cells:** The two major subpopulations of B lymphocytes.

**basophil:** A type of granulocyte found in the blood and resembling the tissue mast cell

**Bursa of Fabricius:** A primary lymphoid organ in avian species, located at the cloacal-hind gut junction; it is the site of B-cell maturation

**Chemokines:** A family of structurally-related cytokines which selectively induce



chemotaxis and activation of leukocytes.

**Cortex:** Outer (peripheral) layer of an organ.

**Cytokines:** Low molecular weight proteins that stimulate or inhibit the differentiation, proliferation or function of immune cells

**Cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL, T<sub>c</sub>):** T-cells which kill target cells following recognition of foreign peptide–MHC molecules on the target cell membrane.

**Dendritic cell:** Refers to an inter-digitating dendritic cell which presents processed antigens to T-cells in the T-cell areas of secondary lymphoid tissues

**Effector cells:** Cells which carry out an immune function

**Gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT):** Includes Peyer's patches, appendix and solitary lymphoid nodules in the submucosa

**Helper T lymphocyte (T<sub>h</sub>):** A subclass of T-cells which provide necessary help for the expression of effector function by other cells in the immune system

**Hematopoiesis:** The production of erythrocytes, leukocytes and platelets

**Hematopoietic stem cells:** Self-renewing stem cells that are capable of giving rise to all of the formed elements of the blood

**Immunocompetence:** The ability of the body to produce a normal immune response following exposure to an antigen.

**Interleukins (IL):** Designation for some of the cytokines secreted by leukocytes.

**Kuppfer cells:** Fixed tissue macrophages lining the blood sinuses in the liver.

**Leukocyte:** White blood cells, which include neutrophils, basophils, eosinophils, lymphocytes and monocytes

**Lymph:** The tissue fluid which drains into and through the lymphatic system

**Macrophage:** Large phagocytic cell, derived from the blood monocyte, which also functions as an antigen-presenting cell and can mediate ADCC.

**Mast cell:** A tissue cell with abundant granules which resembles the blood basophil.



**Medulla:** Inner (central) region of an organ.

**Mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT):** Lymphoid tissue present in the surface mucosa of the respiratory, gastrointestinal and genitourinary tracts.

**Peyer's patches:** Part of the gut associated lymphoid tissue (GALT) and found as distinct lymphoid nodules mainly in the small intestine

**Phagocyte:** Cells, including monocytes/macrophages and neutrophils, which are specialized for the engulfment of cellular and particulate matter

**Plasma cell:** Terminally differentiated B lymphocyte which actively secretes large amounts of antibody

**Primary immune response:** The relatively weak immune response which occurs upon the first encounter of naive lymphocytes with a given antigen.

**Primary lymphoid organs:** The sites at which immune-competent lymphocytes develop, i.e. bone marrow and thymus in mammals

**Stem cell:** Multi potential cell from which differentiated cells derive

**T-cell receptor (TCR):** The hetero-dimeric antigen receptor of the T lymphocyte exists in two alternative forms

**Thymocyte:** Developing T-cell in the thymus.

**White pulp:** The portion of the spleen containing dense aggregation of lymphocytes, namely lymphoid follicles, and peri-arteriolar white sheath; distinguished from RED-PULP.

---

## 4.5 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTION AND ANSWERS

---

### Multiple Choice Questions

1. B cell are distinguished from T cells by the presence of
  - A. CD4
  - B. Surface Ig
  - C. CD8
  - D. CD3
2. Protection against microorganisms inside cells is provided by:
  - A. T-cells
  - B. Antibody
  - C. C3b
  - D. C1q

3. Factors may influence the induction of an immune response include
- A. The nature of an antigen      B. The route of administration
  - C. The dose of antigen      D. All of the above
4. The secondary, but not the primary, immune response is based on
- A. Memory      B. The bonus effect of multivalency
  - C. Complement activation      D. Mast cell degranulation
5. T cell-derived cytokines
- A. Are antigen-specific products of T cell activation
  - B. Are stored in the resting T cell and released on activation
  - C. Are MHC-restricted in their effects
  - D. Influence the class of antibodies produced by B cell

**Answers:**

- 1. Surface Ig      2. T-cells
- 3. All of the above      4. Memory
- 5. Influence the class of antibodies produced by B cell

**Fill in the blanks:**

- 1. During the \_\_\_\_\_ thymus reaches its maximal size.
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ always act by binding to specific receptors.
- 3. The lymphatic system consist of \_\_\_\_\_ & \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. T lymphocytes mature in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. Bone marrow is of two types i.e. \_\_\_\_\_ bone marrow & \_\_\_\_\_ bone marrow.

**Answer:**

- 1. Teenage/puberty      2. Cytokines
- 3. Lymphatic vessels & lymphoid organs      4. Thymus.
- 5. Red & yellow

**Short Answer Type Questions**

1. Define lymph?

Ans. Lymph is the fluid that circulates throughout the lymphatic system.

2. Name the primary lymphoid organs?

Ans. The thymus and the bone marrow constitute the primary lymphoid organs.

3. Name the secondary lymphoid organs?

Ans. The lymph nodes and the spleen are secondary lymphoid organs.

4. Define tonsils?

Ans. The tonsils are a pair of soft tissue masses located at the rear of the throat (pharynx). Each tonsil is composed of tissue similar to lymph nodes, covered by pink mucosa.

5. Explain MALT?

Ans. MALT stands for mucosa associated lymphoid tissue, the mucosa is a moist tissue that lines body organs and cavities including nose, mouth, lungs, and digestive system.

#### **4.6.5 Long Answers Type Questions**

1. Explain the primary lymphoid organs and summarize their functions in the immune response?
2. Explain T lymphocytes & their working?
3. Briefly describe B lymphocytes & its types?
4. Explain the role of lymph nodes in immunity?
5. Describe & explain working of spleen?

---

#### **4.7 REFERENCES:**

---

Lydyard, P.M., Whelan, A. and Fanger, M.W., (2004). Immunology. Garland Science/BIOS Scientific Publishers Limited

---

## UNIT: 5 HUMORAL IMMUNITY

---

### CONTENT

#### 5.1 Objective

#### 5.2 Antigen

##### 5.2.1 Exogenous antigens

##### 5.2.2 Endogenous antigens

##### 5.2.3 Neoantigens

##### 5.2.4 Tumour antigens

##### 5.2.5 Viral antigens

#### 5.3 Antigenicity

#### 5.4 Antigen processing and presentation

#### 5.5 Adjuvants

##### 5.5.1 Modes of action of adjuvants

##### 5.5.2 Immunomodulation

##### 5.5.3 Induction of CD8 + Cytotoxic T-Lymphocyte (CTL) Responses

##### 5.5.4 Targeting

##### 5.5.5 Depot Generation

#### 5.6 Haptens

#### 5.7 Immunoglobulins

##### 5.7.1 Structure

##### 5.7.2 Function

#### 5.8 Complement system (antigen-antibody reactions)

#### 5.9 Summary

#### 5.10 Self assessment question

#### 5.11 Glossary

#### 5.12 Reference

---

## 5.1 OBJECTIVES

---

- To define antigen & its antigenicity
- To differentiate antigen from immunogens and haptens
- To define antibody & its characteristics
- To explain various types of immunoglobulins
- To describe complement system

---

## 5.2 ANTIGEN

---

A foreign substance that is fit for animating an insusceptible reaction, particularly initiating lymphocytes, which are the body's contamination battling white platelets, is named as an antigen. An antigen might be a substance from nature, for example, chemicals, microorganisms, infections, dust or may likewise from inside the body. An antigen is a particle equipped for prompting a safe reaction with respect to the host living being, however once in a while antigens can be a piece of the host itself. An antigen is a protein communicated by a microscopic organisms or infection that is perceived by the safe framework as remote which can empower the creation of antibodies and consolidate particularly with them. Typically an antigen is an atom, maybe on the phone surface of a bacterium or infection. Antigens are constantly 'remote' and trigger an assault. The framework is typically tolerant of its own particles, which don't begin an assault. At the point when an antigen is brought into the body it causes the creation of antibodies. Antigens incorporate microscopic organisms, cells of transplanted organs, plant dust and poisons. Antigens fortify the creation of antibodies: they don't deliver them specifically. Whenever a similar antigen contacts the body, a full-scale insusceptible reaction isn't required as the body as of now has a particular immunizer accessible in a flash for that antigen. Substances, for example, proteins, nucleoproteins, polysaccharides and glycolipids can go about as antigens. Proteins are known to be the most powerful antigens and polysaccharides are second in the rundown. The first occasion when that another antigen comes into contact with the

body the reaction of the resistant framework will be an entire invulnerable reaction. Amid this first reaction, the antigen will make antibodies be made. Lipids and nucleic acids are antigenic just when joined with proteins and polysaccharides. On the surface of antigens are locales, called antigenic determinants that fit and tie to receptor atoms of corresponding structure on the surface of the lymphocytes. The official of the lymphocytes' receptors to the antigens' surface atoms fortifies the lymphocytes to increase and to start an invulnerable reaction—including the generation of neutralizer, the actuation of cytotoxic cells, or both—against the antigen. The measure of counter acting agent framed in light of incitement relies upon the kind and measure of antigen included the course of section to the body, and individual qualities of the host.

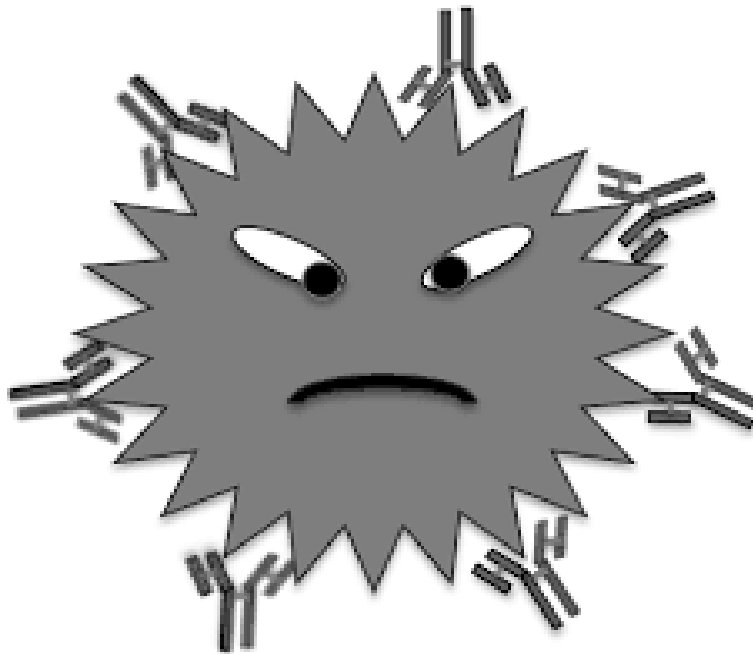


Fig 5.1

Antigens can be classified according to their source and are of following types:

---

### 5.2.1EXOGENOUS ANTIGENS

---

Exogenous antigens will be antigens that have entered the body all things considered, by inward breath, ingestion or infusion. The invulnerable framework's reaction to exogenous antigens is frequently subclinical. By endocytosis or phagocytosis, exogenous antigens are taken into the antigen-displaying cells (APCs) and prepared into sections. APCs at that point show the pieces to T aide cells (CD4+) by the utilization of class II histocompatibility atoms on their surface. Some T cells are particular for the peptide: MHC complex. They end up plainly initiated and begin to discharge cytokines, substances that actuate cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTL), immunizer emitting B cells, macrophages and different particles. A few antigens begin as exogenous, and later end up noticeably endogenous for instance, intracellular infections. Intracellular antigens can be come back to course upon the pulverization of the contaminated cell.

---

### 5.2.3ENDOGENOUS ANTIGENS

---

Endogenous antigens are created inside ordinary cells because of typical cell digestion, or as a result of viral or intracellular bacterial contamination. The parts are then introduced on the cell surface in the complex with MHC class I particles. In the event that enacted cytotoxic CD8+ T cells remember them, the T cells discharge different poisons that reason the lysis or apoptosis of the tainted cell. Endogenous antigens incorporate xenogenic (heterologous), autologous and idiotypic or allogenic (homologous) antigens.

---

### 5.2.4NEOANTIGENS

---

Neoantigens are those that are completely truant from the typical human genome. As contrasted and nonmutated self-antigens, neoantigens are of pertinence to tumor control, as the nature of the T cell pool that is accessible for these antigens isn't influenced by focal T cell resistance.

---

### 5.2.5 TUMOUR ANTIGENS

---

Tumor antigens are those antigens that are displayed by MHC class I or MHC class II atoms on the surface of tumor cells. Antigens discovered just on such cells are called tumor-particular antigens (TSAs) and by and large outcome from a tumor-particular transformation. More typical are antigens that are introduced by tumor cells and ordinary cells, called tumor-related antigens (TAAs). Cytotoxic T lymphocytes that perceive these antigens might have the capacity to devastate tumor cells. Tumor antigens can show up on the surface of the tumor as, for instance, a changed receptor, in which case they are perceived by B cells.

---

### 5.2.6 VIRAL ANTIGENS

---

Virus-related tumors, for example, cervical growth and a subset of head and neck diseases, epitopes got from viral open perusing outlines add to the pool of neoantigens.

In light of hereditary thought antigens are partitioned into three sorts: Autoantigens, alloantigens and heteroantigens

- **Autoantigens:** These are simply the antigens having a place with have, any antigen that fortifies autoantibodies in the living being that delivered it.
- **Alloantigens:** These are the antigens got from different individuals from types of the host, however not from the host itself. Such antigens are vital in tissue transplant and blood transfusion forms.  
e.g antigens display on giver and the beneficiary RBCs are alloantigens to each other
- **Heteroantigens:** These antigens are from two unique species, for example, plants and creatures or microorganisms and so forth. A counter acting agent that is created by a person of one animal category and is equipped for empowering a resistant reaction in a person of another species.

---

### 5.2.7 ANTIGENICITY

---



Antigen is the limit of a concoction structure to tie particularly with a gathering of specific items that have versatile resistance: T cell receptors or antibodies. Antigenicity is the capacity to join particularly with the antibody and every single surface receptor. Antigens are the substances which respond with the results of an invulnerable reaction, the effector atoms (Ab)/effector cells (CTLs) for end of remote particles and this property is known as antigenicity. Consequently an antigen may tie particularly perfectly or B cell receptor, yet not prompt a versatile insusceptible reaction. On the off chance that the antigen induces a reaction, it is an 'immunogenic antigen', which is alluded to as an immunogen. In spite of the fact that a substance that incites a particular resistant reaction is generally called an antigen, it is all the more suitably called an immunogen. Substances fit for prompting a particular insusceptible reaction are called antigens. To be more exact the substances which can produce an insusceptible reaction (humoral as well as cell interceded) are called immunogens and this capacity of a substance is called immunogenicity. Albeit all particles that have the property of immunogenicity additionally have the property of antigenicity, yet the invert isn't genuine i.e. all immunogens are antigen yet all antigens are not immunogen. Immunogenicity and antigenicity are connected however particular immunologic properties. The littlest unit of antigenicity is known as the antigenic determinant or epitope.

- **Determinants of antigenicity**

Immunogenicity/Antigenicity isn't an inborn property of an antigen yet rather relies upon various properties of the specific natural framework that the antigen experiences. Various properties are in charge of making a substance antigenic which are as per the following:

- **Foreignness:** Most critical factor of an immunogen is that it must be outside as for its host. To inspire a resistant reaction, a particle must be perceived as nonself by the natural framework. Just antigens which are 'remote' to the individual (nonself) initiate an invulnerable reaction. The antigenicity of a substance is identified with the level of its strangeness. Self antigens are not perceived because of people are tolerant to their own self atom. A lot of their capacity to endure self antigens emerges amid lymphocyte improvement, amid which youthful lymphocytes are presented to self-segment. At the point when the antigen is brought into a living being the level of immunogenicity relies upon the level of its strangeness. Antigens from related species are less antigenic than those from removed species.

**Example:** Antigen Bovine Serum Albumin (BSA) isn't immunogenic when infused into a dairy animals yet it is firmly immunogenic when infused into rabbit.

- **Molecular measure:** Antigenicity is identified with the sub-atomic size, as there is a connection between the span of immunogen and immunogenicity. Most antigens are expansive, complex atoms with a sub-atomic weight by and large more noteworthy than around 100,000 daltons. Substances with under 5000 - 10,000 dalton measure are poor immunogens. When all is said in done expansive atoms are better immunogens when contrasted with littler particles. Large atoms are exceptionally antigenic and particles with low antigenicity are nonantigenic.

**Example:** Bovine gamma globulin (BCG) 1,50,00 dalton, Bovine serum egg whites (BSA) 69,0000 dalton, Tetanus toxoid 1,50,000 dalton, Ovalbumin (OVA) 44, 000 dalton.

- **Chemical piece:** The more prominent the level of unpredictability of protein the most enthusiastic will be safe reaction in these manner proteins and polysaccharides are great immunogen when contrasted with lipids and nucleic acids as most basic resistant reaction are those to proteins. Copolymers made out of various amino acids or sugars are normally more immunogenic than homopolymers of their constituents. Exceedingly adaptable particles having no settled shape are poor antigens. Straightforward dull polysaccharides don't accept a steady arrangement thus is poor immunogens.

**Example: gelatin, flagellin**

- **Degradability:** The T partner cells (Th) cells are required to be enacted and help in the advancement of both the humoral and cell intervened resistant reaction. Since an antigen is to be prepared and given MHC particles for improvement of invulnerable reaction, the macromolecules that can't be debased and displayed are poor immunogens. Which can't be debased and handled by the degradative chemicals of the antigen displaying cells (APCs) fill in as poor immunogens? Vast particles are promptly phagocytosed and handled and henceforth are more immunogenic.  
e.g., Polymers containing D-amino acids

---

### 5.3 ANTIGEN PROCESSING AND PRESENTATION

---

Just substances which are processed and are powerless to the activity of tissue proteins act as antigens. Antigens brought into the body are corrupted by the host into pieces of fitting size containing the antigenic determinants. The advancement of both humoral and cell-intervened invulnerable reactions requires collaboration of T cells with antigen that has been prepared and given together MHC particles. Expansive, insoluble macromolecules are unequivocally more immunogenic than little, dissolvable atoms on the grounds that the bigger particles are all the more easily phagocytosed and prepared by APC. Macromolecules that can't be corrupted and given MHC particles are poor immunogens.

**Example:** As polymers of D amino corrosive can't be corrupted on the grounds that APC can debase just protein containing L-amino corrosive.

- **Dosage and course of organization:** A deficient dosage and an extreme high measurement go about as poor antigens. Lower measurements can either neglect to actuate enough lymphocytes or they incite a nonresponsive state. Too high a measurement likewise neglects to incite an insusceptible reaction since it instigates a nonresponsive state in the lymphocytes. Along these lines a negligible ideal measurement and furthermore a rehashed organization (supporter dosages) are required to animate a solid safe reaction by expanding the multiplication of particular T and B cells. The course of organization impacts the cells and organs engaged with an insusceptible reaction. Normal courses of organization are intravenous, intradermal, subcutaneous, intramuscular and intraperitoneal. It is the course of organization which chooses the safe organs and cell populaces which will partake in the safe reaction.
- **Genotype of the Recipient:** The hereditary constitution (genotype) of an inoculated creature impacts the kind of safe reaction the creature shows, and additionally the level of the reaction. The qualities that encode MHC, B cell and T cell receptors and different proteins for invulnerable direction are known to impact the sort and the force of the resistant reaction.
- **Antigenicity specificity:** The premise of antigenic specificity is a stereochemical. Crossreaction can happen between antigens that bear stereochemical likenesses. In a few occasions, clear cross responses may really be because of the sharing of indistinguishable antigenic determinants by various antigens.

- **Species specificity:** Tissues of all people in animal varieties contain animal types particular antigens. There exists some level of cross - response between antigens of related species.
- **Isospecificity:** Isoantigens are antigens found in a few however not all individuals from an animal categories. The species might be gathered relying upon the nearness of various iso-antigens in its individuals.
- **Autospecificity:** Autologous or self antigens are conventionally non-antigenic however there are exemptions. Sequestered antigens that are not regularly discovered free available for use or tissue liquids are not perceived as a self antigens.. Thus, antigens that are truant amid embryonic life and grow later are additionally not perceived as self antigens.
- **Organ specificity:** Some organs, for example, the mind, kidney and focal point protein of various species, share a similar antigen. Such antigens, normal for organ or tissue and found in various species, are organ – particular antigens.
- **Heterogenetic (heterophile) specificity:** The same or firmly related antigens may sometimes happen in various organic species, classes and kingdoms. These are known as heterophile antigens.

---

## 5.5ADJUVANTS

---

Adjuvants (Latin adjuvare, to upgrade) are substances that, when blended with an antigen and infused with it, improve the immunogenicity of that antigen. An adjuvant is a pharmacological or immunological operator that adjusts the impact of different specialists. Adjuvants are frequently used to help the insusceptible reaction when an antigen has low immunogenicity or when just little measures of an antigen are accessible. Adjuvants might be added to an immunization to alter the insusceptible reaction by boosting it, for example, to give a higher measure of antibodies and a more drawn out enduring insurance, in this way limiting the measure of infused outside material. Adjuvants are utilized to improve the viability of an immunization by altering the insusceptible reaction to specific sorts of invulnerable framework cells, by actuating T cells rather than immunizer discharging B cells relying upon the motivation behind the antibody. Adjuvants are likewise utilized as a part of the creation of antibodies from vaccinated creatures. They apply following impacts; antigen

industriousness is delayed. Co-stimulatory signals are improved. Neighborhood irritation is expanded. The nonspecific expansion of lymphocytes is fortified. Albeit immunological adjuvants have generally been seen as substances that guide the safe reaction to the antigen, adjuvants have additionally advanced as substances that can help in settling details of antigens, particularly for antibodies managed for creature wellbeing. Adjuvants are added to immunizations to fortify the safe framework's reaction to the objective antigen, however don't give insusceptibility themselves. Adjuvants can act in different routes in exhibiting an antigen to the resistant framework. Adjuvants can go about as a station for the antigen, introducing the antigen over a more extended timeframe, along these lines expanding the insusceptible reaction before the body clears the antigen. An adjuvant can likewise go about as an aggravation, which draws in and intensifies the body's invulnerable reaction.

Example: Alum is the most usually utilized adjuvant in human inoculation. It is found in various antibodies, including diphtheria-lockjaw pertussis, human papillomavirus, and hepatitis immunizations.

Adjuvants are ordered into two sorts as following:

1. **Particulate adjuvants:** Those adjuvants which exist as tiny particles and owe at least some of their adjuvant action. These contain-
  - Aluminium salts
  - Oil-in-water emulsions
  - Water-in-oil emulsions
  - Nano and microparticles
  - Liposomes
  - Immune stimulating complexes (ISCOM adjuvant-Iscofer AB)
2. **Non-Particulate adjuvants:** These are adjuvants where action does not rely on any particulate or multimeric nature. They are general immunomodulators through some enhanced focusing on, most advantage from relationship with a particulate adjuvant. These incorporate:
  - Muramyl dipeptide (MDP) and derivatives

- Non-ionic block copolymers
- Saponin
- Bacterial toxins
- Derivatized polysaccharides
- Carbohydrate polymers
- Cytokines
- Lipid A

---

### 5.5.1 MODES OF ACTION OF ADJUVANTS

---

Adjuvants are expected to enhance steering and versatile insusceptible reactions to antigens. These responses are interceded by two fundamental sorts of lymphocytes, B and T cells. Adjuvants apply their belongings through five distinctive specified instruments.

---

### 5.5.2 IMMUNOMODULATION

---

It alludes to the capacity of numerous adjuvants to change the cytokine organize i.e. just immunomodulatory mixes will apply an adjuvant impact when presented at a different time or site to the immunogen. Immunomodulation may bring about a general up-direction of the whole safe framework. Determination of a proper immunomodulatory adjuvant prompt an upgraded safe reaction. A decent adjuvant improves a balanced invulnerable reaction.

**Presentation:** This alludes to the capacity of an adjuvant to safeguard the conformational respectability of an antigen and to show this to suitable resistant effector cells. This will happen when an adjuvant can collaborate with an antigen such that conformational epitopes are all the more effectively kept up.

---

### 5.5.3 INDUCTION OF CD8 + CYTOTOXIC T-LYMPHOCYTE (CTL) RESPONSES

---

This alludes to enlistment of CTL reactions by and large expects antigen to be prepared inside the cell cytosol where peptides, for the most part of nine amino acids 9 mers, wind up

plainly joined inside the shut end score of the MHC class I atom and are then communicated on the cell surface.

---

### **5.5.4TARGETING**

---

This characterizes the capacity of an adjuvant to convey an im-munogen to invulnerable effector cells, for the most part by means of APCs. This type of adjuvant action may not change the kind of invulnerable reaction yet rather will influence the measure of immunogen required to accomplish a given impact i.e. the proficiency of the age of the resistant reaction.

---

### **5.5.5DEPOT GENERATION**

---

It is accomplished as a short and long haul station, by giving a ceaseless or beat discharge. Here and now terminals are accomplished by aluminum salts and water-oil emul-sions, where antigen is caught at the infusion site and accordingly can't be lost by liver freedom. Extraction of the infusion site eight to ten days subsequent to dosing has pretty much nothing if any impact on extent or span of reaction, suggest-ing that antigen has either been evacuated or walled-off by that stage. Long haul stations are best accomplished utilizing engineered polymers, for example, polylactide coglycolide (PLG), to create microspheres, which corrupt to yield a beat conveyance.

---

### **5.6HAPTENS**

---

Haptens are little natural particles that are antigenic however not immunogenic. These are little particles that can tie to antibodies yet can't without anyone else initiate an insusceptible reaction. They can inspire a safe reaction just when appended to a vast transporter, for example, a protein. These mixes end up plainly immunogenic when they are conjugated with atomic physio-substance complex transporter and change over into immunogenic hapten bearer conjugate. Once the body has created antibodies to a hapten-transporter, the conjugate shaped by coupling a hapten to a substantial bearer protein is immunogenic and evokes generation of hostile to hapten antibodies when infused into a creature. Such infusions likewise deliver hostile to bearer and against hapten/transporter antibodies too. Antibodies created against haptens are particular for transporters, the haptens and consolidated parts of

both haptens and bearer. Independent from anyone else a hapten can't work as an immunogenic epitope yet when numerous particles of a solitary haptens are coupled to a transporter protein, the hapten winds up plainly accessible to the insusceptible framework and capacity as immunogen.

**Example:** Home-pregnancy test unit contain antihapten antibody to decide if a lady's pee contain HCG (Human endless gonadotropin)

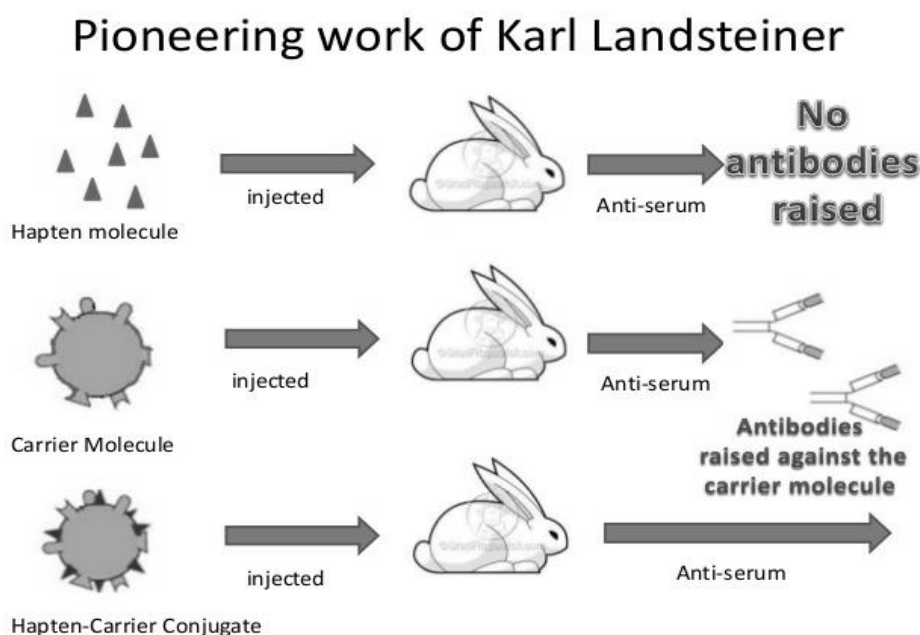


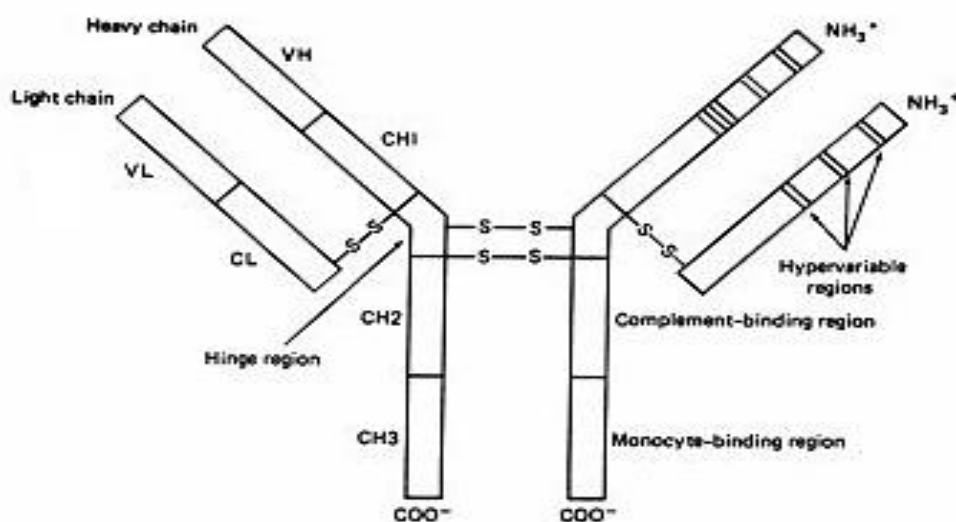
Fig 5.2 Pioneering work of karl Landsteiner

## 5.7IMMUNOGLOBULIN'S

The immunoglobulin's get their name from the finding that they move with globular proteins when counter acting agent containing serum is put in an electrical field. An immunoglobulin (Ig), otherwise called a counter acting agent (Ab), is a vast, Y-molded protein created chiefly by plasma cells that is utilized by the safe framework to distinguish and kill pathogens. Antibodies are antigen restricting proteins show on the B-cell film and discharged by plasma cells. The counter acting agent atom is discharged into the blood or lymph because of an antigenic boost, for example, a bacterium, infection, parasite, or transplanted organ, and that kills the antigen by restricting particularly to it. They are the glycoprotein with particular amino corrosive grouping and distinctive antigen restricting destinations. Antibodies by and



large are called as Immunoglobulins i.e. Ig. It is the most inexhaustible protein segment in blood. Immunizer atom performs two particular capacities antigen acknowledgment and antigen end. Antibodies are emitted by B cells of the versatile safe framework, for the most part by separated B cells called plasma cells. Antibodies can happen in two physical structures, a solvent frame that is discharged from the cell to be free in the blood plasma, and a layer bound shape that is connected to the surface of a B cell and is alluded to as the B-cell receptor (BCR).



### 5.5.8STRUCTURE

Blood can be isolated in an axis into a liquid and a cell division. The liquid portion is the plasma and the cell part contains red platelets, leukocytes, and platelets. Plasma contains the greater part of the solvent little atoms and macromolecules of blood, including fibrin and different proteins required for the development of blood clumps. In the event that the blood or plasma is permitted to cluster, the liquid stage that remaining parts is called serum, antibodies lives in the serum. The least complex antibodies are Y-formed atoms with two indistinguishable antigen restricting site, one at the tip of each arm. Antibodies have a typical structure of four polypeptide chains. This structure comprises of two indistinguishable light (L) chains, polypeptides of around 25,000 sub-atomic weight, and two indistinguishable substantial (H) chains, bigger polypeptides of sub-atomic weight at least 50,000. Like the counter acting agent atoms they constitute, H and L chains are additionally called immunoglobulins. Each light bind is bound to a substantial chain by a disulfide bond, and by

such non-covalent connections as salt linkages, hydrogen bonds, and hydrophobic bonds, to shape a heterodimer (H-L). Comparable non-covalent communications and disulfide spans interface the two indistinguishable overwhelming and light (H-L) fasten blends to each other to frame the essential four-chain (H-L)<sub>2</sub> neutralizer structure, a dimer of dimmers. Every polypeptide chain contains an amino terminal and a carboxyl terminal. Antibodies are glycoproteins having a place with the immunoglobulin superfamily. They constitute the vast majority of the gamma globulin portion of the blood proteins. They are regularly made of fundamental basic units—each with two huge substantial chains and two little light chains. There are a few distinct sorts of counter acting agent overwhelming chains that characterize the five unique sorts of crystallisable pieces (Fc) that might be connected to the antigen-restricting sections. The five distinct sorts of Fc areas enable antibodies to be assembled into five isotypes. Each Fc locale of a specific counter acting agent isotype can tie to its particular Fc Receptor (aside from IgD, which is basically the BCR), accordingly permitting the antigen-neutralizer complex to intervene distinctive parts relying upon which FcR it ties. The capacity of an immunizer to tie to its relating FcR is additionally regulated by the structure of the glycan(s) introduce at saved destinations inside its Fc region. The capacity of antibodies to tie to FcRs coordinates the proper resistant reaction for each unique kind of outside question they experience. In spite of the fact that the general structure of all antibodies is fundamentally the same as, a little area at the tip of the protein is to a great degree variable, permitting a large number of antibodies with somewhat unique tip structures, or antigen-restricting destinations, to exist. This district is known as the hypervariable locale. Each of these variations can tie to an alternate antigen. This gigantic decent variety of counter acting agent paratopes on the antigen-restricting parts enables the resistant framework to perceive a similarly wide assortment of antigens.

- **Light chain sequencing:** The amino terminal segment of the atom is a piece of the variable or V area and carboxyl terminal is the steady or C locale. Amino terminal locale has 110 a.a. that fluctuates extraordinarily among antibodies of various specificity. The carboxyl terminal portion of the atom called as the steady area has premise of which light chains are of two sort kappa (κ) and lambda (λ). Anybody individual of an animal categories deliver the two sorts of light chain. In people 60% of light chains are kappa and 40% are lambda.
- **Heavy chain sequencing:** The amino terminal piece of the substantial chain comprises of 100-110 a.a. The rest of the piece of the overwhelming chain or

consistent piece of substantial chain indicates five fundamental grouping design, as per which overwhelming chains are of five distinct sorts and each of these five diverse overwhelming chains are called as an isotype. The length of the steady district is approx. 330 a.a. to 440 a.a. The alpha, beta and gamma contain an expanded peptide succession between steady overwhelming locale 1 and consistent substantial area 2 called as pivot district. Pivot district fill in as a kind of string that permits the Fab segments and Fc locale to move with respect to each other. Pivot locale is rich in proline substance i.e. why it is presented more to catalysts and chemicals. The quaternary structure of the immunoglobulins is framed by encouraging non-covalent communications between immunoglobulin spaces over the characteristics of the  $\beta$  sheets. These collaborations frame interface between non-indistinguishable spaces and between indistinguishable areas.

---

### 5.7.2Function

---

Antibodies perceive the antigen and take an interest in an expansive scope of other natural exercises, which will bring about expulsion of the antigen and demise of the pathogen. The variable districts of the counter acting agent tie to the antigen and the substantial chain steady area includes in an assortment of community communications with different proteins, cells and tissues that outcome in the effector elements of the humoral reaction. These effector capacities result from collaborations between overwhelming chain consistent locales and other serum proteins or cell film receptors.

The principle capacity of counter acting agent activity incorporates the accompanying:

- Neutralisation, in which killing antibodies piece parts of the surface of a bacterial cell or virion to render its assault incapable
- Agglutination, in which antibodies "stick together" outside cells into clusters that are alluring focuses for phagocytosis
- Precipitation, in which antibodies "stick together" serum-solvent antigens, compelling them to accelerate out of arrangement in bunches that are appealing focuses for phagocytosis

- Complement actuation (obsession), in which antibodies that are hooked onto an outside cell urge supplement to assault it with a film assault complex, which prompts the lysis of the remote cell and support of irritation by chemo tactically drawing in provocative cells.

---

### 5.7.3Types

---

In people there are five artificially and physically unmistakable classes of antibodies (IgG, IgA, IgM, IgD, IgE). Distinctive immune response classes with various organic exercises have developed to manage antigens (e.g. organisms) with various properties and which enter the body at various destinations – through the skin, the gastrointestinal or the genitourinary tracts. Each class is recognized by one of a kind amino corrosive arrangements in the substantial chain consistent district that give class-particular basic and utilitarian properties.

- (i) **Immunoglobulin G (IgG):** It is the most bottomless counter acting agent in serum and constitutes around 75-80% of the aggregate serum immunoglobulin. It has the longest half existence of 23-25 days. The IgG particle comprises of two  $\gamma$  substantial chains and two  $\kappa$  or two  $\lambda$  light chains. There are four human IgG subclasses, recognized by contrasts in affix succession and numbered to their diminishing normal serum fixations: IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4. The amino corrosive groupings that recognize the four IgG subclasses are encoded by various germ-line CH qualities, whose DNA successions are 90%– 95% homologous. The auxiliary qualities that recognize these subclasses from each other are the span of the pivot locale and the number and position of the between chain disulfide bonds between the overwhelming chains. The unpretentious amino corrosive contrasts between subclasses of IgG influence the organic action of the atom:
- IgG1, IgG3 and IgG4 give invulnerability to the creating baby since they can promptly cross the placenta and go into neonatal dissemination.
  - IgG1 and IgG3 tie with high fondness to Fc receptors on the phagocytic cells and in this manner intervene phagocytosis. IgG4 has direct fondness for Fc receptors while IgG2 has a to a great degree low liking.

- IgG3 is the best supplement activator, trailed by IgG1; IgG2 is less effective and IgG4 can't enact supplement by any means.
- IgG assumes a noteworthy part in balance of poisons since it can without much of a stretch diffuse into extravascular spaces.

**(ii) Immunoglobulin M (IgM):** IgM is the main immunoglobulin class delivered in an essential reaction to an antigen, and it is additionally the principal immunoglobulin to be combined by the neonate. IgM represents 5-10% of the aggregate serum immunoglobulin. IgM is discharged by plasma cells as a pentamer in which five monomer units are held together by disulfide bonds. The five monomer subunits are organized with their Fc areas in the focal point of the pentamer and the ten antigen restricting destinations on the fringe of the atom. Each pentamer contains an extra polypeptide called the "J" (joining) chain, which is connected by two of the ten carboxyl terminal spaces. The J chain is required for the polymerization of the monomers to shape pentameric IgM. Monomeric IgM is additionally communicated as film bound neutralizer on B cells. Pentameric IgM has 10 antigen-restricting locales consequently it is more proficient than different isotypes in restricting antigens with many rehashing epitopes, for example, viral particles. Less IgM than IgG is required to kill viral infectivity. IgM is likewise more productive than IgG at enacting supplement. Supplement initiation requires two Fc districts in closeness, and the pentameric structure of single IgM atoms satisfies this necessity. IgM particle does not diffuse well due to the vast size, in this way is found in low focuses in intercellular tissue liquids. J chain encourages the official of IgM to receptors on secretory cells, which transports it crosswise over epithelial linings to enter the outer emissions that submerge mucosal surfaces.

**(iii) Immunoglobulin A (IgA):** It is the overwhelming immunoglobulin class in outside emission, for example, spit, tears, bosom drain, respiratory discharge, and genitourinary and stomach related track discharges. IgA constitutes 10-15% of the aggregate immunoglobulin in serum. IgA exists essentially as a monomer, however some of the time polymeric structures (dimers, trimers and some tetramers) containing J chain polypeptide is additionally observed. The secretory IgA comprises of a dimer or tetramer, a J chain polypeptide and a secretory segment. The J chain polypeptide in

IgA encourages polymerization work like if there should arise an occurrence of IgM. The secretory part is created by epithelial cells of mucous layers. The secretory part is comprised of five immunoglobulin like spaces that ties to the Fc area of IgA dimer. The everyday creation of secretory IgA is more noteworthy than that of some other immunoglobulin class. IgA discharging plasma cells are focused along mucous layer surfaces. The plasma cells that create IgA specially move to subepithelial tissue, where secretory IgA ties to poly-Ig receptor introduce on the basolateral surface of most mucosal epithelia. After IgA ties to poly-Ig receptor, the receptor-IgA complex is then transported over the epithelial cell to luminal film by receptor intervened endocytosis. The poly-Ig receptor is then divided enzymatically from the film and turns into the secretory part, which is bound to and discharged together with polymeric IgA into mucosal emission. The secretory segment veils the destinations helpless to protease cleavage along these lines enabling the polymeric IgA to exist longer in the protease rich mucosal condition. Pentameric IgM is additionally transported into mucosal emission by this instrument. Polymeric secretory IgA helps in catching the pathogen like microscopic organisms and infections by keeping their connection to the epithelial cell divider. Secretory IgA can cross-interface extensive antigens with different epitopes in this way repressing viral disease and bacterial colonization. Buildings of secretory IgA and antigen are effectively ensnared in mucous and afterward killed by ciliated. Epithelial cells of the respiratory track or by peristalses of the gut. Secretory IgA gives powerful barrier against microorganisms like Salmonella, Vibrio cholerae, and Neisseria gonorrhoeae and infections, for example, flu, polio and reovirus (infections have dsRNA genomes). Secretory IgA in bosom drain secures the infant against disease amid the main month of life on the grounds that the insusceptible arrangement of newborn children isn't completely practical.

**(iv) Immunoglobulin E (IgE):** The serum grouping of IgE is low (0.3µg/ml) however it is exceptionally strong in real life. It intervenes the unfavorably susceptible response or excessive touchiness responses like asthma, roughage fever and hypersensitivity responses. IgE ties to the Fc receptors on the films of basophils and pole cells. Cross linkage of receptor bound IgE by antigen (allergen) instigates basophils and pole cells to translocate their granules to the plasma layer and discharge their substance to the

additional cell condition, process known as degranulation. Hence an assortment of pharmacologically dynamic go between like histamine, bradykinin and other vasoactive go between are discharged and offer ascent to unfavorably susceptible and hypersensitivity signs.

- (v) **Immunoglobulin D (IgD):** It is found on B-cell surface alongside IgM and go about as a receptor for antigen authoritative. It is available in low fixation (30µg/ml) and constitutes around 0.2% of the aggregate immunoglobulin in serum. It initiates the B cells subsequent to authoritative to the antigen. No other capacity is known about IgD.

---

## 5.7 COMPLEMENT SYSTEM (ANTIGEN-ANTIBODY REACTIONS)

---

The expression "supplement" was instituted by Paul Ehrlich to depict the movement in serum, which could "supplement" the capacity of particular neutralizer to cause lysis of microbes. Supplement alludes to new serum fit for lysing neutralizer covered cells. The supplement framework is a piece of the resistant framework that improves (supplements) the capacity of antibodies and phagocytic cells to clear microorganisms and harmed cells from a life form, advances aggravation, and assaults the pathogen's plasma layer. It is a piece of the natural safe framework, which isn't versatile and does not change through the span of a person's lifetime. It can be enlisted and brought without hesitation by the versatile safe framework. Supplement framework is made out of more than 25 unique proteins delivered by hepatocytes, macrophages and intestinal epithelial cells. Fibroblasts and intestinal epithelial cells make C1, while the liver makes C3, C6, and C9. They are available in the dissemination as idle atoms. The supplement framework comprises of various little proteins found in the blood, when all is said in done orchestrated by the liver, and typically coursing as dormant antecedents (genius proteins). At the point when empowered by one of a few triggers, proteases in the framework sever particular proteins to discharge cytokines and start an opening up course of further cleavages. The final product of this supplement initiation or supplement obsession course is incitement of phagocytes to clear outside and harmed material, intermediary irritation to draw in extra phagocytes, and enactment of the cell-murdering layer assault complex. More than 30 proteins and protein sections make up the supplement framework, including serum proteins, serosal proteins, and cell film receptors. They represent around 10% of the globulin portion of blood serum and can fill in as opsonins.



Initiation of supplement brings about the generation of a few naturally dynamic atoms, which add to nonspecific invulnerability and irritation. Supplement isn't antigen-particular and it is enacted quickly within the sight of pathogen, so it is considered piece of intrinsic insusceptibility. Since neutralizer likewise initiates some supplement proteins, supplement actuation is additionally part of humoral resistance. Their actuation continues by means of various pathways in a course mold prompting lysis.

---

### 5.8.1 PATHWAYS OF COMPLEMENT SYSTEM

---

The supplement actuation can be separated into three pathways, traditional, lectin (mannose restricting protein) and option.

- Classical Pathway/Antigen-Antibody responses:** Complement actuation by the established pathway usually starts with the arrangement of solvent antigen-counter acting agent com-plexes (invulnerable buildings) or with the authoritative of neutralizer to antigen on an appropriate target, for example, a bacterial cell. IgM and certain subclasses of IgG (human IgG1, IgG2, and IgG3) can enact the traditional supplement pathway. The underlying phase of actuation includes C1, C2, C3, and C4, which are available in plasma in practically latent structures. The development of an antigen-counter acting agent complex instigates conformational changes in the Fc segment of the IgM mole-cule that uncover a coupling site for the C1 part of the supplement framework. C1 is the primary supplement segment to take an interest in traditional pathway. It is made out of C1q, C1r and C1s. Official of C1q to Ag-Ab edifices brings about autocatalysis of C1r. The adjusted C1r severs C1s and this cleaved C1s is fit for dividing both C4 and C2. Actuated C1s enzymatically separates C4 into C4a and C4b. C4b ties to the Ag-bearing molecule or cell film while C4a remains a naturally dynamic peptide at the response site. C4b ties C2, which ends up plainly helpless to C1s and is cut into C2a and C2b. C2a remains complexed with C4b though C2b is discharged. C4b2a complex is known as C3 convertase. C3 convertase, within the sight of  $Mg^{++}$ , severs C3 into C3a and C3b. C3b ties to the layer to shape C4b2a3b complex though C3a stays in the microenvironment. A C4b2a3b complex capacity as C5 convertase, which separates C5 into C5a and C5b. Age of C5 convertase marks the finish of the traditional pathway. C5b starts the arrangement of film assault complex. C1qrs can likewise tie to various specialists including some



retroviruses, mycoplasma, poly-inosinic corrosive and collected IgG, and start the traditional pathway.

---

## 5.9 SUMMARY

---

All immunogens are antigens however not all antigens are immunogens. A substance that actuates a resistant reaction is called an antigen. In the event that the antigen invigorates generation of an immunizer, it will respond particularly, for the most part in a detectable way, with counter acting agent. An immunogen is a substance that can prompts a resistant reaction however which does not really tie to its particular counter acting agent. Immunogenicity is dictated by many variables including strangeness, atomic size, concoction organization, many-sided quality, dosage, powerlessness to antigen preparing and introduction, the genotype of the beneficiary creature (specifically, its MHC qualities), course of organization, and adjuvants. Most antigens are unfamiliar to the host. They are expansive atoms, for example, proteins and polysaccharides. Little compound gatherings on the antigens particles, called epitopes, constitute that are perceived by antibodies. Haptens are little atoms that can tie to antibodies however a resistant reaction can't without anyone else's input initiate. In any case, the conjugate framed by coupling a hapten to an expansive transporter protein is immunogenic and inspires generation of hostile to hapten antibodies when infused into a creature. Such infusions likewise create hostile to transporter and against hapten/bearer antibodies too. The term immune response means the presence of discrete body that can demonstration against pathogen or its item. Different names incorporate g-globulin, immunoglobulin. Antibodies are safeguard protein (glycoproteins) delivered by versatile insusceptible arrangement of vertebrate to battle attacking pathogens. Neutralizer is a Y molded particle made up of four polypeptides i.e. two chains of higher sub-atomic weight (substantial chain) and two chains of low sub-atomic weight (light chain). N-terminal area of around 110 amino acids in both light and overwhelming chain contrast (fluctuate) among various antibodies and is called as factor district. This locale frames arms of Y molded immunizer and ties antigen. The tail of Y is constituted by consistent area and is engaged with receptor authoritative and supplement initiation. Antibodies have been isolated into various classes or isotypes in view of the distinction in the steady district. The classes IgG, IgA, IgM, IgD, IgE have diverse utilitarian properties. Immunoglobulins of same class showing allelic contrast between themselves, even of maybe a couple amino acids are called as allotypes. Allotypes of IgG in person A will be unique in relation to IgG in person B.

Idiotypic determinants are framed generally by amino acid succession of hypervariable locale of antigen restricting site of counter acting agent. IgG is the most plentiful immunizer of inward body liquids. It battles organisms and their poisons. IgA is overwhelming counter acting agent in outside emissions where it shields surface against viral and bacterial attack. IgM is extremely powerful agglutinator, while IgE is significant immune response of hypersensitive responses. IgD is fundamentally found on the surface of develop B-cell and is most likely associated with lymphocyte initiation. Immunoglobulin superfamily, of which neutralizer is a part, is an expansive and differing gathering of protein involving counter acting agent, MHC class I and II atom, T-cell receptor, CD3 particle and attachment atoms. The elements of the individuals from this superfamily run from antigen acknowledgment, attachment atoms to receptor for infections and cytokines. A neutralizer particle comprises of two indistinguishable light chains and two indistinguishable overwhelming chains, which are connected by disulfide bonds. Every substantial chain has an amino-terminal variable area took after by a steady locale. The substantial chain isotype decides the class of a counter acting agent (IgM;  $\mu$ , IgG;  $\gamma$ , IgD;  $\delta$ , IgA; and  $\alpha$ , IgE). The five counter acting agent classes have diverse effector capacities, normal serum focuses, and half-lives. Each of the spaces in the immunoglobulin particle has a trademark tertiary structure called the immunoglobulin crease. Inside the amino-terminal variable space of every substantial and light chain are three complementarity-deciding areas (CDRs). These polypeptide districts contribute the antigen-restricting site of an immune response, deciding its specificity. Immunoglobulins are communicated in two structures: discharged neutralizer that is delivered by plasma cells, and layer bound counter acting agent that partners with Ig- $\mu$ /Ig- $\gamma$  heterodimers to shape the B-cell antigen receptor show on the surface of B cells. The three noteworthy effector works that empower antibodies to expel antigens and murder pathogens are: opsonization, which advances antigen phagocytosis by macrophages and neutrophils; supplement enactment, which initiates a pathway that prompts the age of an accumulation of proteins that can puncture cell films; and neutralizer subordinate cell-intervened cytotoxicity (ADCC), which can execute counter acting agent bound target cells.

---

**5.10SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTION**

---

**Multiple Choice Questions**

1. Tears contain ...
  - (a) IgA
  - (b) IgG.
  - (c) Lysozyme.
  - (d) all of the above
2. IgE ...
  - (a) is bound together by J chain.
  - (b) binds to mast cells through its Fab region.
  - (c) differs from IgG antibody because of its different H chains.
  - (d) is present in high concentration in serum
3. The Fc region of antibody ...
  - (a) Contains both heavy and light chains.
  - (b) is required for antigen binding.
  - (c) Is not a requirement for placental transmission.
  - (d) Generally confers biological activity on the various molecules
4. The fixation of complement by an antigen-antibody reaction can lead to ...
  - (a) Formation of a factor chemotactic for mononuclear cells.
  - (b) Enhanced phagocytosis.
  - (c) Activation of T cells.
  - (d) Increased synthesis of antibody
5. Ig heavy chains are ...
  - (a) Encoded by a Constant region exon, Variable exon, Diversity exon, and joining exon.
  - (b) Not glycosylated
  - (c) not important to binding of antigen.
  - (d) Expressed by T cells.

**Answers:**

1. All of the above
2. Differs from IgG antibody because of its different H chains
- 3 generally confers biological activity on the various molecules

4. Activation of T cells
5. Encoded by a Constant region exon, Variable exon, Diversity exon, and joining exon

**Fill in the blanks:**

1. Dendritic cells are characterized by their interface between the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ immune systems.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ doesn't receive IgM antibodies from the mother through placental transfer.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ are antigenic determinants which segregate within a species.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ portion of Ig contains the idiotype of the Ig.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ deficiency can be detected by serum protein electrophoresis.

**Answer:**

- |                      |            |
|----------------------|------------|
| 1. Innate & adaptive | 2. Newborn |
| 3. Allotopes         | 4. Fab     |
| 5. Immunoglobulin    |            |

**Short Answer Type Questions**

1. Define an Epitope?

Ans. The smallest unit of antigenicity is known as epitope.

2. Define Isoantigen?

Ans. Antigens found in some but not all members of a species are called as isoantigen.

3. Define an immunogen?

Ans. An immunogen is a substance that can induce an immune response but which does not necessarily bind to its specific antibody.  
Lk b

4. Name the different types of antibody?

Ans. IgG, IgA, IgM, IgD, IgE

5. Define adjuvant?

Ans. The substance, which enhance the immunogenicity of an antigen.

**Long Answers Type Questions**

1. Explain antigen & its properties of antigenicity?
2. Describe immunoglobulin & its types with their functions?
3. Explain complement system briefly?
4. What is classical pathway explain?
5. Elaborate mode of action of adjuvant?

---

**5.11 GLOSSARY**

---

**Active immunization:** Stimulation of an immune response by exposure to an antigen

**adjuvant:** Any substance which nonspecifically enhances the immune response to antigen

**Agglutination:** The "clumping" of a particulate antigen resulting from antibody cross-linking, which may be visible by the naked eye or under a microscope.

**Alloantibody:** Antibody produced in one organism directed against ALLOTYPE determinants of a genetically different individual of the same species.

**Allotype:** A genetic POLYMORPHISM or "allelic type" of immunoglobulin

**Antibody:** Immunoglobulins (Ig) produced by lymphoid cells of vertebrates with the ability to specifically bind to antigen

**Antigen:** A molecule which is specifically recognized and can be bound by antibody.

**Antigenic determinant:** A cluster of epitopes

**Autoimmunity:** Specific immunity, either humoral or cell-mediated, to constituents of the body's own tissues (autoantigens).

**Classical pathway** (of complement activation): Activation pathway involving complement components

**Complement:** An enzymatic complex of serum proteins that is activated by many antigen-antibody reactions

**Domain:** a structural element of a polypeptide

**Epitope:** The minimal portion of an antigen molecule which is recognized and bound by an antibody; also referred to as an ANTIGENIC DETERMINANT

**Fab:** "Antigen-binding" fragment of immunoglobulin molecules produced by proteolysis

**Fc:** "Crystallizable" fragment of immunoglobulin molecules produced by proteolysis

**Fv:** The variable region fragment of an antibody heavy or light chain

**Hapten:** A small molecule which by itself cannot stimulate antibody production but which can be recognized and bound by antibody once the antibody has been formed

**Hinge region:** That portion of the immunoglobulin heavy chain

**Idiotypic:** The antigenic determinant(s) of an antibody molecule

**Immunoassay:** Any method utilizing specific antigen-antibody reaction of biological material

**Immunogen:** Any substance which elicits an immune response.

**Immunoglobulin:** Member of a family of proteins each made up of light chains and heavy chains linked together by disulfide bonds.

**Isotype:** In relation to immunoglobulins

**J-Chain:** "Joining chain"; the polypeptide chain covalently attached to the heavy chain of secreted IgM and polymeric IgA during the process of their polymerization

**Membrane attack complex (MAC):** Complex of complement components

**Monospecific:** Describing an antibody population specific for a particular antigenic determinant

**Opsonization:** The facilitation of phagocytosis by macrophages or granulocytes resulting from antibody and/or complement bound to a target

**Passive immunization:** Transfer of immunity by transfer of specific antibody

**Plasma:** The fluid portion of anti-coagulated blood remaining after the "formed elements" (cells and platelets) are removed

**Serum:** The fluid portion of blood which remains after a blood clot is formed.

---

## 5.12 REFERENCES

---

1. Kind, Thomas J., Goldsby, Richard A., Osborne, Barbara Anne. And Kuby, Janis. (2007):  
Kuby Immunology. New York: W.H. Freeman.
2. Lydyard, P.M., Whelan, A. and Fanger, M.W., (2004). Immunology. Garland  
Science/BIOS Scientific Publishers Limited

---

## UNIT: 6 CELL MEDIATED IMMUNITY

---

### CONTENTS

- 6.1 Objectives
- 6.2 MHC (Major histocompatibility complex)
- 6.3 Function and Structural organisation of MHC
  - 6.3.1 Class I MHC genes
  - 6.3.2 Class II MHC genes
  - 6.3.3 Class III MHC gene
- 6.4 Antigen processing and presentation
  - 6.4.1 The Endogenous Pathway
  - 6.4.2 The Exogenous Pathway
- 6.5 Function of T- cells
  - 6.5.1 Cytotoxic T cells
  - 6.5.2 T assistant cell
  - 6.5.3 Regulatory T cell
- 6.6 Summary
- 6.7 Glossary
- 6.8 Self assessment questions



---

## 6.1 OBJECTIVES

---

- To define Cell mediated immunity
- To describe MHC
- To explain exogenous pathway
- To explain endogenous pathway
- To describe functions of T-cells

---

## 6.2 MHC (MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY COMPLEX)

---

The real histocompatibility complex (MHC) is an arrangement of cell surface proteins fundamental for the gained insusceptible framework to perceive remote atoms in vertebrates, which thusly decides histocompatibility. MHC complex is gathering of qualities on a solitary chromosome that codes the MHC antigens. The significant histocompatibility complex is an accumulation of qualities showed inside a long persistent extend of DNA on chromosome 6 in people. The loci constituting the MHC are profoundly polymorphic; that is, numerous option types of the quality, or alleles, exist at every locus among the populace. In the mammalian genome and, all the more particularly, in the human genome the most factor area known structures the Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) that conveys an awesome number of various loci coding for utilitarian qualities. Some of these qualities likewise display numerous variations (alleles), portraying an amazingly polymorphic region.(1) These qualities have a place with the human leukocyte antigen (HLA) framework and code for the significant particles responsible for antigen introduction on the cell surface.

---

## 6.3 FUNCTION AND STRUCTURAL ORGANISATION OF MHC

---

The principle capacity of MHC particles is to tie to peptide sections got from pathogens and show them on the cell surface for acknowledgment by the fitting T-cells. MHC atoms intercede associations of leukocytes, additionally called white platelets (WBCs), which are invulnerable cells, with different leukocytes or with body cells. The MHC decides similarity of benefactors for organ transplant, and in addition one's powerlessness to an immune system malady by means of crosses responding inoculation. The human MHC is likewise called the HLA (human leukocyte antigen) complex. In spite of the fact that the plan

of qualities is to some degree unique, as the MHC qualities are composed into locales encoding three classes of atoms.

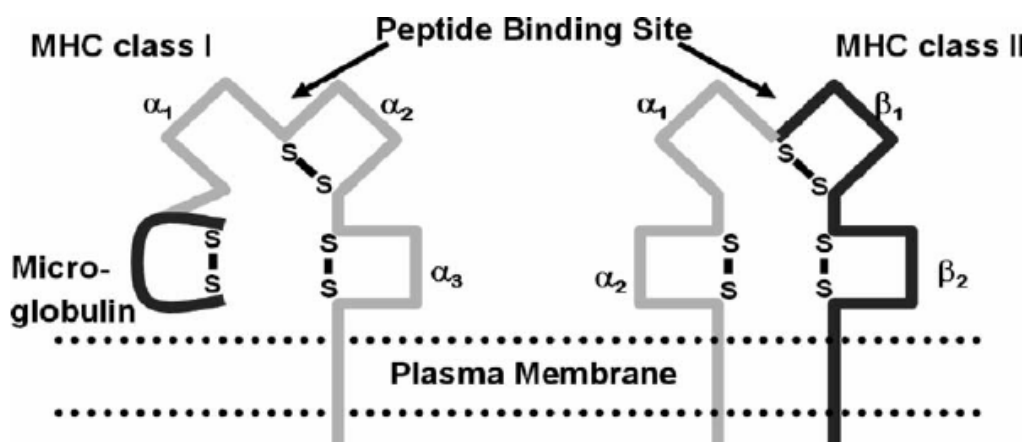


Fig 7.1 Class of MHC

### 6.3.1 CLASS I MHC GENES

The structure of MHC class I proteins can be isolated in two globular areas: one locale is situated close to the film and comprises of the b2 microglobulin and a3 spaces. These two areas relate through the four-strand b-sheet yet in a route not quite the same as that in which counter acting agent C spaces pack together. The second district, assist far from the film, comprises of spaces a1 - a2 and contains the antigen restricting site. The structure of a1 and a2 is very comparative and is made out of four antiparallel b-strands took after by a helical locale on one side. The two areas are hydrogen reinforced in a way that the eighth b-strands shape a story over the b2 microglobulin and a3 spaces. The two a-helices shape a hole which is the antigen restricting site. The fissure cans accomodate a 8 deposit (completely broadened) or a 20 buildup (a-helical) peptide. Polymorphic locales in MHC class 1 particles are found both in the floor and also in the helices and characterize which peptides the protein can tie and present to T cells. It encode glycoproteins communicated on the surface of about every single nucleated cell; the significant capacity of the class I quality items is introduction of peptide antigens to TC cells.

---

### 6.3.2 CLASS II MHC GENES

---

MHC class II proteins are polymorphic cell surface proteins which display remote antigens to the T cell receptor of T aide cells. They are heterodimers of two polypeptide chains (a and b) both of which traverse the layer. The a polypeptide comprises of two areas (a1 and a2) which superimpose nearly to the a1 and b2 spaces of MHC class I atoms. The b polypeptide comprises of two spaces (b1 and b2) which superimpose nearly on the a2 and less nearly on the a3 areas of MHC class I. The a2 and b2 spaces have the crease of an Ig C area and they pack in a route like that seen between the b2 and a3 areas of MHC class I. Contrasts in the helical districts of class II and class I particles clarify why class I atoms tie 8-9 mer peptides though class II tie 12-24 mer peptides. The b2 area of class II atoms associate with the CD4 coreceptor on T-cells. Class I MHC atoms as a rule tie peptides of 8– 10 buildups length (by and large 9-mers, P1– P9) of Figure 3) in a broadened compliance. The cooperation with the MHC protein leaves the side chains of a few deposits of the peptide pointing upward for collaboration with the TCR (see Fig Peptide adaptation in MHC class I and class II proteins). In class II MHC proteins, the notch is open at either end, and the peptide ends are not settled. Consequently, longer successions can be suited contrasted with class I. It encodes glycoproteins communicated basically on antigen-showing cells (macrophages, dendritic cells, and B cells), where they display prepared antigenic peptides to TH cells.

---

### 6.3.3 CLASS III MHC GENE

---

Encode, notwithstanding different items, different emitted proteins that have resistant capacities, including parts of the supplement framework and atoms associated with irritation.

The class I and class II MHC particles have basic highlights and both have parts in antigen handling. By differentiate, the class III MHC district, which is flanked by the class I and II locales, encodes particles that are basic to invulnerable capacity yet have little in the same manner as class I or II atoms. Each arrangement of alleles is alluded to as a haplotype. Decent variety of antigen introduction, interceded by MHC classes I and II, is accomplished in no less than three ways: a life form's MHC collection is polygenic (by means of numerous,

cooperating qualities); MHC articulation is co-prevailing (from the two arrangements of acquired alleles); MHC quality variations are very polymorphic (differently fluctuating from life form to creature inside an animal categories). MHC is the tissue-antigen that permits the resistant framework (all the more particularly T cells) to tie to, perceive, and endure itself (autorecognition). MHC is additionally the chaperone for intracellular peptides that are complexed with MHCs and displayed to TCRs as potential outside antigens. MHC interfaces with TCR and its co-receptors to streamline restricting conditions for the TCR-antigen connection, as far as antigen restricting proclivity and specificity, and flag transduction viability

**Structure:** The MHC complex dwells in the short arm of chromosome 6 and general size of the MHC is roughly 3.5 million base sets. The class I quality complex contains three loci A, B and C, each of which codes of  $\alpha$  chain polypeptides. The class II quality complex likewise contains no less than three loci, DP, DQ and DR; each of these loci codes for one  $\alpha$  and a variable number of  $\beta$  chain polypeptides. Class III area isn't really a piece of the HLA complex, however is situated inside the HLA district, since its segments are either identified with the elements of HLA antigens or are under comparative control components to the HLA qualities. Class III antigens are related with proteins in serum and other body liquids and have no part in join dismissal. HLA specificities are recognized by a letter for locus and a number (A1, B5, and so forth.), and the haplotypes are distinguished by singular specificities (e.g., A1, B7, Cw4, DP5, DQ10, DR8). Specificities which are characterized by genomic investigation (PCR), are named with a letter for the locus and a four digit number (e.g. A0101, B0701, C0401, and so forth.).

---

## 6.4 ANTIGEN PROCESSING & PRESENTATION

---

Antigen handling is an immunological procedure that gets ready antigens for introduction to unique cells of the resistant framework called T lymphocytes. It is thought to be a phase of antigen introduction pathways. Acknowledgment of remote antigens by a T cell requires peptides got from the antigen be shown inside the parted of a MHC atom on the film of a cell. The arrangement of these peptide-MHC buildings requires that a protein antigen be corrupted into peptides by a succession of occasions called antigen handling. The corrupted peptides at that point connect with MHC atoms inside the cell inside, and the peptide-MHC edifices are

transported to the film, where they are shown is named as antigen introduction. CD4\_ and CD8\_T cells can perceive antigen just when it is introduced by a self-MHC particle, a characteristic called self-MHC confinement. An assortment of cells can work as antigen-displaying cells. Their recognizing highlight is their capacity to express class II MHC particles and to convey a co-stimulatory flag. Three cell sorts are named proficient antigen-displaying cells: dendritic cells, macrophages, and B lymphocytes. These cells vary from each other in their components of antigen take-up, in whether they constitutively express class II MHC atoms, and in their co-stimulatory action. Dendritic cells are the best of the antigen-displaying cells. Since these cells constitutively express an abnormal state of class II MHC atoms and co-stimulatory movement, they can initiate credulous TH cells. Macrophages must be initiated by phagocytosis of particulate antigens previously they express class II MHC atoms or the co-stimulatory B7 layer particle. B cells constitutively express class II MHC atoms yet should be initiated before they express the co-stimulatory B7 particle. A few other cell sorts, delegated nonprofessional antigen-displaying cells, can be incited to express class II MHC particles or a co-stimulatory flag (Table 8-1). Huge numbers of these phones work in antigen introduction just for brief timeframes amid a supported provocative reaction. Antigen handling includes two unmistakable pathways for preparing of antigens to dispose of intracellular and extracellular antigens i.e. endogenous pathway and exogenous pathway.

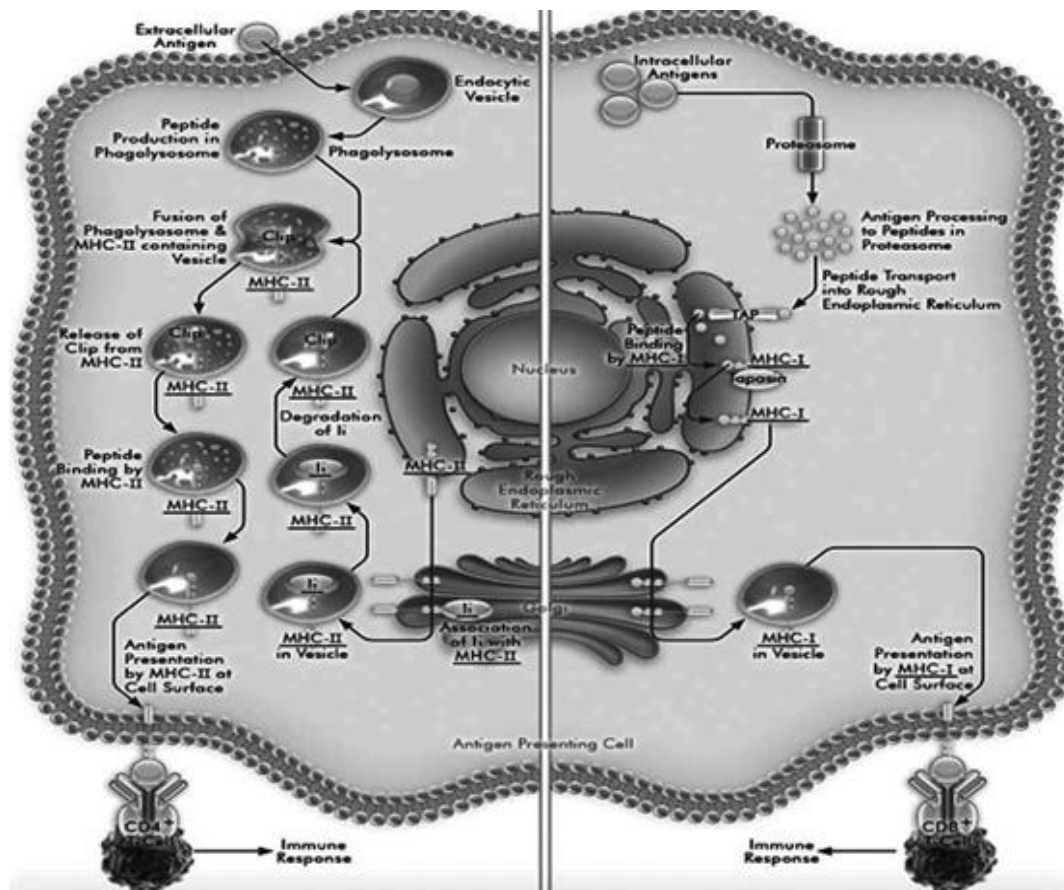


Fig 7.2 Antigen processing

### 6.4.1 The Endogenous Pathway

Endogenous antigens (those produced inside the cell) are handled in the cytosolic pathway and displayed on the cell surface with class I MHC particles. The pathway by which endogenous antigens are processed for introduction with class I MHC atoms uses the same pathways associated with the typical turnover of intracellular proteins. The endogenous pathway is utilized to exhibit cell peptide sections on the cell surface on MHC class I particles. On the off chance that an infection had tainted the cell, viral peptides would likewise be exhibited, enabling the insusceptible framework to perceive and murder the contaminated cell. Exhausted proteins inside the cell move toward becoming ubiquitinated, stamping them for proteasome debasement. Intracellular proteins are corrupted into short peptides by a cytosolic proteolytic framework introduce in all cells. Those proteins focused for proteolysis regularly have a little protein, called ubiquitin, joined to them. Ubiquitin-protein conjugates can be debased by a multifunctional protease complex called a proteasome. The transporter protein, assigned TAP (for transporter related with antigen preparing) is a layer spreading over

heterodimer comprising of two proteins: TAP1 and TAP2. Notwithstanding their various transmembrane sections, the TAP1 and TAP2 proteins each have a space anticipating into the lumen of the RER, and an ATP-restricting area that undertaking into the cytosol. Both TAP1 and TAP2 have a place with the group of ATP-restricting tape proteins found in the films of numerous cells, including microscopic organisms; these proteins intervene ATP-subordinate transport of amino acids, sugars, particles, and peptides. Peptides created in the cytosol by the proteasome are translocated by TAP into the RER by a procedure that requires the hydrolysis of ATP. TAP has the most astounding fondness for peptides containing 8– 10 amino acids, which is the ideal peptide length for class I MHC authoritative. Moreover, TAP support peptides with hydrophobic or fundamental carboxyl-terminal amino acids, the favored stay deposits for class I MHC particles. In this manner, TAP is upgraded to transport peptides that will cooperate with class I MHC particles. Once the peptide is transported into the ER lumen it ties to the split of the anticipating MHC class I particle, settling the MHC and enabling it to be transported to the cell surface by the golgi mechanical assembly.

---

#### 6.4.2 THE EXOGENOUS PATHWAY

---

Exogenous antigens (those taken up by endocytosis) are handled in the endocytic pathway and displayed on the layer with class II MHC atoms. The exogenous pathway is used by specific antigen exhibiting cells to display peptides got from proteins that the cell has endocytosed. The peptides are exhibited on MHC class II particles. Proteins are endocytosed and corrupted by corrosive ward proteases in endosomes. B cells, disguise antigen successfully by receptor-intervened endocytosis utilizing antigen-particular film counter acting agent as the receptor. Once an antigen is disguised, it is corrupted into peptides inside compartments of the endocytic preparing pathway. The endocytic pathway includes three progressively acidic compartments early endosomes, late endosomes, or endolysosomes and lysosomes. Disguised antigen moves from ahead of schedule to late endosomes lastly to lysosomes, experiencing hydrolytic proteins and a lower pH in every compartment. Inside the compartments of the endocytic pathway, antigen is debased into oligopeptides of around 13– 18 residues, which tie to class II MHC atoms. The beginning MHC class II protein in the harsh ER has its peptide-restricting separated obstructed by Ii (the invariant chain; a trimer) to keep it from restricting cell peptides or peptides from the endogenous pathway. The



invariant chain likewise encourages MHC class II's fare from the ER in a vesicle. This breakers with a late endosome containing the endocytosed, corrupted proteins. The invariant fasten is then softened up stages, leaving just a little section called "Class II-related invariant chain peptide" (CLIP) which still obstructs the peptide restricting parted. A MHC class II-like structure, HLA-DM, expels CLIP and replaces it with a peptide from the endosome. The stable MHC class-II is then displayed on the cell surface.

---

## 6.5 FUNCTIONS OF T-CELLS

---

A T cell, or T lymphocyte, is a sort of lymphocyte (a subtype of white platelet) that assumes a focal part in cell-intervened resistance. They are called T cells since they develop in the thymus from thymocytes. The few subsets of T cells each have an unmistakable capacity. The lion's share of human T cells modify their alpha and beta chains on the cell receptor and are named alpha beta T cells ( $\alpha\beta$  T cells) and are a piece of the versatile resistant framework. Lymphocytes perceive a "non-self" target, for example, a pathogen, simply after antigens have been prepared and exhibited in blend with a "self" receptor, called a noteworthy histocompatibility complex (MHC) atom. There are two noteworthy subtypes of T cells: the executioner T cell, which slaughters cells that are tainted with infections (and different pathogens) or are generally harmed or broken, and the assistant T cell, which directs both natural and versatile resistant reactions and figures out which safe reactions the body makes to a specific pathogen. These cells have no cytotoxic action and don't murder tainted cells or clear pathogens straightforwardly. White blood cells can be isolated into three noteworthy gatherings in light of capacity: cytotoxic T cells, partner T cells (Th), and administrative T cells (Tregs).

---

### 6.5.1 CYTOTOXIC T CELLS

---

Cytotoxic T lymphocytes will be lymphocytes that slaughter other ("target") cells. Target cell incorporates infection tainted cells; cells contaminated with intracellular bacterial or protozoal parasites; allografts, for example, transplanted kidney, heart, lungs and malignancy cells. CTL have a place with the CD8<sup>+</sup> subset of T cells; utilize the  $\alpha\beta$  T-cell receptor for



antigen (TCR) in this manner perceive antigens settled ready of class I histocompatibility (MHC) atoms. On the off chance that they experience the antigen/MHC for which their TCR is particular, they enter the cell push and experience a few rounds of mitosis took after by separation into effector ("executioner") cells. Their separation incorporates framing countless lysosomes loaded down with proteins: perforin and a few sorts of granzyme. They are helped in these exercises by aide T cells that emit stimulatory cytokines like IL-21. A large portion of CTLs kick the bucket of apoptosis when they have done their activity, yet some progress toward becoming memory cells which are seemingly perpetual cells ready to react to the antigen in the event that it ought to return.

---

### 6.5.2 T - ASSISTANT CELL

---

The T aide cells (Th cells) are a sort of T cell that assumes an imperative part in the invulnerable framework, especially in the versatile safe framework. They help the movement of other safe cells by discharging T cell cytokines. These cells help smother or direct invulnerable reactions. They are fundamental in B cell counter acting agent class exchanging, in the actuation and development of cytotoxic T cells, and in boosting bactericidal movement of phagocytes, for example, macrophages. The resistant framework must accomplish an adjust of affectability so as to react to remote antigens without reacting to the antigens of the host itself. At the point when the insusceptible framework reacts to low levels of antigen that it as a rule shouldn't react to, an extreme touchiness reaction happens. Excessive touchiness is accepted to be the reason for sensitivity and some auto-resistant sickness. Extreme touchiness responses is isolated into four sorts

- **Type 1** excessive touchiness incorporates normal invulnerable issue, for example, asthma, hypersensitive rhinitis (feed fever), skin inflammation, urticaria (hives) and hypersensitivity. These responses all include IgE antibodies, which require a Th2 reaction amid partner T cell advancement. Preventive medications, for example, corticosteroids and montelukast, concentrate on smothering pole cells or other unfavorably susceptible cells; T cells don't assume an essential part amid the genuine fiery reaction. It's imperative to take note of that the numeral designation of extreme touchiness "sorts" does not associate (and is totally random) to the "reaction" in the Th demonstrate.

- Type 2 and Type 3 touchiness both include complexities from auto-safe or low proclivity antibodies. In both of these responses, T cells may assume an assistant part in producing these auto-particular antibodies, albeit some of these responses under Type 2 extreme touchiness would be viewed as typical in a solid safe framework (for instance, Rhesus factor responses amid labor is an ordinary invulnerable reaction against youngster antigens). The comprehension of the part of assistant T cells in these reactions is restricted however it is for the most part believed that Th2 cytokines would advance such issue. For instance, examines have proposed that lupus (SLE) and other auto-safe maladies of comparable nature can be connected to the generation of Th2 cytokines.
- Type 4 excessive touchiness, otherwise called postponed sort extreme touchiness, are caused by means of the over-incitement of insusceptible cells, usually lymphocytes and macrophages, bringing about constant irritation and cytokine discharge. Antibodies don't assume an immediate part in this hypersensitivity sort. Immune system microorganisms assume an imperative part in this extreme touchiness, as they initiate against the boost itself and advance the actuation of different cells; especially macrophages through Th1 cytokines.

---

### 6.5.3 REGULATORY T CELL

---

The administrative T cells otherwise called silencer T cells, are a subpopulation of T cells which tweak the resistant framework, keep up resilience to self-antigens, and anticipate immune system infection. Tregs are immunosuppressive and by and large smother or down-control enlistment and expansion of effector T cells. Tregs can treat immune system malady and malignancy and can encourage organ transplantation. T administrative cells are a segment of the resistant framework that smother insusceptible reactions of different cells. This is an essential "self-check" incorporated with the invulnerable framework to avert exorbitant responses. Administrative T cells are associated with closing down safe reactions after they have effectively wiped out attacking creatures, and furthermore in forestalling autoimmunity. The invulnerable framework must have the capacity to separate amongst self and non-self. Whenever self/non-self separation comes up short, the resistant framework decimates cells and tissues of the body and accordingly causes immune system sicknesses.

Administrative T cells effectively stifle actuation of the insusceptible framework and forestall obsessive self-reactivity, i.e. immune system ailment. The basic part administrative T cells play inside the invulnerable framework is confirm by the serious immune system disorder that outcomes from a hereditary insufficiency in administrative T cells. control component is through the IL-2 criticism circle. Antigen-initiated T cells deliver IL-2 which at that point follows up on IL-2 receptors on administrative T cells cautioning them to the way that high T cell movement is happening in the locale, and they mount a suppressory reaction against them.

---

## 6.6 SUMMARY

---

The capacity of MHC particles is to tie peptide pieces got from pathogens and show them on the cell surface for acknowledgment by the proper T cells. The outcomes are quite often malicious to the pathogen-infection contaminated cells are slaughtered, macrophages are enacted to eliminate microscopic organisms living in their intracellular vesicles, and B cells are initiated to deliver antibodies that dispose of or kill extracellular pathogens. In this manner, there is solid specific weight for any pathogen that has transformed such that it escapes introduction by a MHC particle. Two separate properties of the MHC make it troublesome for pathogens to sidestep insusceptible reactions along these lines. To start with, the MHC is polygenic: it contains a few distinctive MHC class I and MHC class II qualities, so every individual has an arrangement of MHC atoms with various scopes of peptide-restricting specificities. Second, the MHC is exceedingly polymorphic; that is, there are different variations of every quality inside the populace all in all. The MHC qualities are, truth be told, the most polymorphic qualities known. In this area, we will depict the association of the qualities in the MHC and talk about how the variety in MHC particles emerges. We will likewise perceive how the impact of polygeny and polymorphism on the scope of peptides that can be bound adds to the capacity of the resistant framework to react to the large number of various and quickly advancing pathogens. • B-cell and discharged antibodies perceive and tie solvent antigen while T-cell perceive and react to antigenic peptide showed on MHC. Antigen either exogenous or endogenous are first prepared and after that displayed on MHC to invigorate T cells i.e. TH cell and Tcyt cell. Cells that show peptides related with class I MHC atoms to CD8+ Tcyt cell is alluded to as target cell. Cell

that showcases peptides related class II MHC particle to TH cell is called as antigen-exhibiting cell. There are three sorts of antigen-showing cells - dendritic cells, macrophages, B-lymphocytes called as expert antigen-introducing cells. Non-proficient antigen-introducing cell express class-II MHC atom upon incitement by interferon. There are two primary preparing pathways prompting either class-I or class-II MHC particles. One is cytosolic pathway utilized by endogenous antigen prompting class I MHC particles. In the second pathway, exogenous antigens are endocytosed, handled and displayed on class-II MHC atoms. Endogenous antigens are first labeled with ubiquitin, and afterward hacked by cell corruption chamber-proteasome into 8-10 amino corrosive deposit peptides. The handled peptides at that point tie peptide transporter TAP1 and TAP2 confined in ER and enter ER. Peptides tie and settle an and b chains of class I MHC atoms. Stacked and completely collapsed stable class I MHC-peptide complex travel through Golgi to the surface of the cell and appeared to Tcyt cell reconnaissance. Introduction and handling of exogenous antigens begins with endocytosis/phagocytosis of antigen from extracellular milieu. Endosome shaped circuits with lysosome bringing about the debasement of protein antigens. Lysosome, which contains different cluster of hydrolases process the protein antigens to produce short peptides. In RER, class II MHC atoms are amassed and after that peptide restricting score is hindered by invariant chain(Ii). The invariant chain coordinates vesicle containing class II MHC particles towards endosome containing antigenic peptides. When class II MHC – Ii complex experiences antigenic peptide, Ii-tie is first divided to frame CLIP which at that point separates. Expulsion of CLIP and stacking of class II MHC particles with antigenic peptide is catalyzed by non-established class II MHC atom HLA-DM. Peptide-class II MHC atom is then exchanged to cell surface for T-cell investigation. Non-peptide antigens, for example, lipid, glycolipid antigen are displayed on non-traditional class I atom – CD1 while prenylpyrophosphates and alkylamines are introduced on novel, newfound antigen showing particles. White blood cells begin as foundational microorganisms (early sorts of cells that have not yet completely developed) and are created by bone marrow. To develop, these undeveloped cells move to the thymus, where they can remain for up to three weeks. Around 99% of T cells don't make it to development. This is on account of the body is exceptionally particular about what T cells are created with the goal that they don't make harm the body's own cells. In the thymus, the T cells are given T cell receptors, of which there are a few sorts. The sort of receptor got figures out what kind of T cell it will be, what its part is, and which cell it can collaborate with. White blood cells work both through the arrival of substances into

the blood, and by flagging B cells through contact. Motivating for development and initiation of B cells. Activation of cells that can 'eat' outside substances. Incitement of cytotoxic T cells amid a viral contamination. Flagging development in cells, including other T cells, macrophages and eosinophils.

---

## 6.7 GLOSSARY

---

**Acute phase proteins.** Found in the blood soon after the onset of an infection, they limit damage caused by the organism and implement repair

**ADCC.** Antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity

**Adhesion molecules.** Cell surface molecules that are involved in cell to cell interactions

**Affinity.** The binding strength of a single receptor to its ligand

**Allelic exclusion.** In a heterozygous individual only one of the two allelic forms

**Anergy.** A state of tolerance involving non-responsiveness to antigen rather than cell deletion

**Antigen presentation.** The display of peptide fragments bound to MHC molecules on the cell surface, necessary for recognition by T cells.

**Antigen processing.** Enzymatic degradation of proteins into peptides to be associated with MHC molecules for T cell recognition

**Antigen-presenting cell (apc):** A cell capable of presenting antigenic peptides associated with MHC Class II to a T-cell

**Clonal selection.** Antigen selects specific B or T cells to expand into clones

**Complementarity determining regions (CDR):** The hypervariable amino acid sequences within antibody and T-cell receptor variable regions which interact with complementary amino acids on the antigen or peptide–MHC complex

**Cross-matching.** Used to test whether recipients have preformed antibodies to blood group or histocompatibility antigens (HLA) to donor tissues that could interfere with successful transplantation

**H-2:** The major histocompatibility complex (MHC) of the mouse

**Haplotype.** A linked set of genes associated with one haploid genome

**HLA.** Human leukocyte antigens are the major histocompatibility antigens in man that bind peptides and present them to T cells

**Integrins.** One of the 'families' of adhesion molecules

**IR genes.** Immune response genes are genetic polymorphisms that control immune responses; they include the HLA genes

**Lamina propria:** The connective tissue underlying the epithelium at mucosal sites

**Locus:** The position in a chromosome at which a particular gene is located

**Membrane attack complex:** The terminal complement components c5b, C6, C7, C8, C9 that result in pore formation and membrane damage.

**MHC restriction:** The necessity that T-cells recognize processed antigen only when presented by MHC molecules of the original haplotype associated with T-cell priming.

**MHC:** Major histocompatibility complex; the genetic locus that codes for HLA

**Mixed lymphocyte reaction (MLR):** A T-cell proliferative response induced by cells expressing allogeneic MHC.

**Pinocytosis:** Internalization of soluble extracellular material by formation of small membrane vesicles

**Polymorphism.** Genetic polymorphism is where a gene has several allelic forms present at a single gene locus

**Qa antigens:** 'Non-classical' MHC class I molecules of mice.

**Serology.** The use of antibodies to detect and measure antigens

---

## 6.8 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTION

---

**Fill in the blanks:**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ activate large numbers of T cells by directly binding to the TCR $\beta$  chain and class II MHC

2. A \_\_\_\_\_ is the total set of MHC alleles present on each chromosome.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is not induced by antihistamines.
4. Tumor immune surveillance is mediated by \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Helper T cells are distinguished from cytotoxic T cells by the presence of \_\_\_\_\_.

**Answer:**

1. Superantigens
2. HLA haplotype
3. Immunosuppression
4. NK cells
5. CD4

## Multiple Choice Questions

1. TCR gene rearrangement
  - A. Takes place primarily in the bone marrow.
  - B. is antigen independent.
  - C. involves immunoglobulin.
  - D requires co-stimulation by antigen presenting cells.
2. The class I MHC processing pathway primarily
  - A. processes antigens that are present in the cytosol.
  - B. processes antigens from the extracellular environment.
  - C. generates peptides, complexes them with class I MHC molecules for presentation to helper T cells.
  - D. generates peptides, complexes them with class I MHC molecules for presentation to NK cells.
3. Host antibody against a tumor would most likely be directed against
  - A. MHC class II antigens.
  - B. viral antigens.
  - C. differentiation antigens.
  - D. MHC class I antigens
4. Major histocompatibility antigens are not ...
  - A. linked with a number of autoimmune diseases.
  - B. important for interactions between T and B cells during an immune response.
  - C. the only antigens which result in graft rejection.
  - D. important for graft versus host reactions

5. HLA disease association ...

- A. means that the particular HLA antigen or Haplotype involved causes the disease.
- B. may in some instances be useful in diagnosis.
- C. means that every person with that HLA type will contract the disease.
- D. may suggest that genes near the MHC locus code for T cell antigen receptors specific for self antigens

**Answers:**

- 1. is antigen independent
- 2. Processes antigens that are present in the cytosol
- 3. Viral antigens
- 4. The only antigens which result in graft rejection
- 5. May in some instances be useful in diagnosis?

**Short Answer Type Questions**

1. Define MHC?

Ans. Major Histocompatibility complex

2. Name the pathways included for antigen presentation?

Ans. Exogenous pathway & Endogenous pathway

3. Name the types of T-cells?

Ans. T-helper cells, Regulatory T cell, Cytotoxic T cells

4. Define HLA?

Ans. The human leukocyte antigen (HLA) system or complex is a gene complex encoding the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) proteins in humans.

5. Define hypersensitivity?

Ans. Hypersensitivity also called hypersensitivity reaction is a set of undesirable reactions produced by the normal immune system, including allergies and autoimmunity.

**Long Answers Type Questions**

1. Explain MHC structure in brief?

2. Describe Antigen processing & presentation in detail?

3. Discuss endogenous & exogenous pathway in brief?

4. Elaborate functions of T-cells?





---

## UNIT: 7 APPLICATIONS OF IMMUNOLOGY

---

### CONTENTS

- 7.1 Objectives
  - 7.1.1 Vaccines
  - 7.1.2 Active immunization
  - 7.1.3 Passive inoculation
- 7.2 Types of vaccines
- 7.3 Immunodiagnostics/Serology
  - 7.3.1 Elisa
  - 7.3.2 Agglutination
  - 7.3.3 Immunoprecipitation
  - 7.3.4 Complement- Fixation
  - 7.3.5 Fluorescent Antibodies/Immunofluorescence
- 7.4 Immunotherapy
  - 7.4.1 Activation immunotherapies
  - 7.4.2 For Cancer
  - 7.4.3 Dendritic cell based immunotherapy
  - 7.4.4 T cell based receptive immunotherapy
  - 7.4.5 Immune upgrade treatment
  - 7.4.6 Suppression immunotherapies
  - 7.4.7 Immunotherapy for sensitivity
  - 7.4.8 Immunotherapy for transplant patients
  - 7.4.9 Immunotherapy for Autoimmune sickness
- 7.5 Summary
- 7.7 Glossary
- 7.6 Self Assessment question
- 7.8 References

---

## 7.1 OBJECTIVES

---

- To define vaccines & their types
- To understand immunodiagnostics & its applications
- To describe the methods of agglutination
- To explain the principle of Complement Fixation Test
- To describe immunotherapy & its various forms

---

### 7.1.1 VACCINES

---

The expression "vaccine" was authored by **Louis Pasteur** to honor first fruitful vaccination against little pox by Edward Jenner. The term vaccine was gotten from "vacca", which means bovine, since Edward Jenner utilized cowpox infection (Vaccinia) to anticipate smallpox contamination. Invulnerability can be gained either by normal procedures (more often than not by exchange from mother to baby or by past disease by the life form) or by fake means, for example, infusion of antibodies or immunizations. An antibody is an organic planning that gives dynamic procured resistance to a specific illness. An immunization regularly contains an operator that looks like a malady causing microorganism and is frequently produced using debilitated or murdered types of the organism, its poisons or one of its surface proteins. The operator empowers the body's resistant framework to perceive the specialist as a risk, wreck it, and keep a record of it with the goal that the safe framework would more be able to effectively perceive and pulverize any of these microorganisms that it later experiences. The organization of antibodies is called immunization. Immunization is the best technique for anticipating irresistible infections. Inoculation includes think presentation to antigen under conditions where sickness ought not come about. Inoculation is gone for initiating dynamic insusceptibility in an individual, so consequent contact with the microorganism following regular disease prompts solid defensive invulnerable reaction. The defensive invulnerability may include discharge of killing antibodies or generation of memory CTL or Th1 cells. An antibody is a suspension of entire (live or inactivated) or fractionated microscopic organisms or infections that have been rendered non-pathogenic, and is given to instigate an insusceptible reaction and anticipate sickness. Despite the fact that no immunization is totally protected or totally powerful, their utilization is firmly upheld by

their advantage to-chance proportion. The antibody vial may contain applicable antigen, adjuvant (typically alum), additives and additionally hints of protein got from the phones in which the immunization operator was refined. Adjuvants generally are utilized to help resistant reaction, especially for more established individuals (50– 75 years and up), whose safe reaction to a straightforward antibody may have debilitated. In the event that an inoculated individual develops the sickness immunized against, the ailment is probably going to be less destructive than in unvaccinated casualties. The resistant framework perceives antibody operators as remote, demolishes them, and "recalls that" them. At the point when the harmful rendition of a specialist is experienced, the body perceives the protein coat on the infection, and along these lines is set up to react, by killing the objective operator before it can enter cells, and perceiving and obliterating contaminated cells previously that operator can increase to tremendous numbers. The specialists utilized for inciting detached resistance incorporate antibodies from people or creatures, while dynamic vaccination is accomplished by immunization with microbial pathogens that initiate insusceptibility however don't cause illness or with antigenic segments from the pathogens. A monovalent antibody is intended to inoculate against a solitary antigen or single microorganism. A multivalent or polyvalent immunization is intended to inoculate against at least two strains of a similar microorganism, or against at least two microorganisms.



*Fig 8.1 Vaccines*

Immunization is done through different methods, most ordinarily immunization. Immunizations against microorganisms that reason illnesses can set up the body's resistant framework, in this way battling or keep a contamination. The most vital components of the insusceptible framework that are enhanced by vaccination are the T cells, B cells, and the antibodies B cells create. Memory B cells and memory T cells are in charge of a quick reaction to a moment experience with an outside particle. Insusceptibility to irresistible microorganisms can be accomplished by dynamic or inactive vaccination. Inoculation is accomplished in a dynamic or aloof way; immunization is a dynamic type of vaccination.

---

### 7.1.2 ACTIVE IMMUNIZATION

---

The objective of dynamic inoculation is to inspire defensive invulnerability and immunologic memory. At the point when dynamic vaccination is fruitful, an ensuing presentation to the pathogenic specialist inspires an increased insusceptible reaction that effectively takes out the pathogen or forestalls sickness interceded by its items. Dynamic inoculation can happen normally when a man interacts with, an organism. The safe framework will in the long run make antibodies and different resistances against the organism. Whenever, the resistant reaction against this organism can be exceptionally effective. Dynamic vaccination can be accomplished by normal contamination with a microorganism, or it can be obtained falsely by organization of an immunization. In dynamic inoculation, as the name suggests, the resistant framework assumes a dynamic part—multiplication of antigen-responsive T and B cells brings about the arrangement of memory cells. Manufactured dynamic inoculation is the place the organism, or parts of it, are infused into the individual before they can take it in normally. On the off chance that entire organisms are utilized, they are pre-treated.

---

### 7.1.3 PASSIVE INOCULATION

---

Passive vaccination is the place pre-blended components of the insusceptible framework are exchanged to a man with the goal that the body does not have to create these components itself. In detached inoculation, preformed antibodies are exchanged to a beneficiary, happens

normally by exchange of maternal antibodies over the placenta to the creating embryo. This technique for vaccination starts to work rapidly, yet it is short enduring, on the grounds that the antibodies are normally separated, and if there are no B cells to create more antibodies, they will vanish. Manufactured uninvolved vaccination is regularly regulated by infusion and is utilized if there has been a current flare-up of a specific ailment or as a crisis treatment.

Vaccines are dead or inactivated creatures or cleansed items got from them. There are a few sorts of antibodies being used. These speak to various procedures used to attempt to diminish the danger of sickness while holding the capacity to incite an advantageous invulnerable reaction.

---

## 7.2 TYPES OF VACCINES

---

**A. Killed/Inactivated Vaccines:** When it is perilous to utilize live microorganisms to get ready antibodies, they are inactivated. These are arrangements of the ordinary (wild sort) irresistible, pathogenic microorganisms that have been rendered non-pathogenic, as a rule by treatment with utilizing warmth, formaldehyde or gamma illumination so they can't repeat by any stretch of the imagination. Such executed antibodies change incredibly in their adequacy. A few antibodies contain inactivated, however already harmful, small scale living beings that have been pulverized with chemicals, warmth, radiation, or anti-microbials.

Exp.: flu, bubonic torment, cholera, hepatitis A, polio and rabies

**Advantages:**

- Safe to utilize and can be given to resistant lacking and pregnant people.
- Cheaper than live constricted antibody
- Storage not as basic as live antibody

**Disadvantages:**

- Since the microorganisms can't increase, an expansive number are required to fortify invulnerability.
- Periodic promoters must be given to look after insusceptibility.
- Only humoral resistance can be initiated.
- Most slaughtered antibodies must be infused.

- Anaphylactic excessive touchiness to eggs may happen in beneficiaries of flu antibody.
- Inactivation, for example, by formaldehyde on account of the Salk antibody, may modify antigenicity.
- Presence of some un-inactivated organisms can prompt immunization related ailment

**B. Live Attenuated Vaccine:** These immunizations are made out of live, weakened microorganisms that reason a constrained contamination in their hosts adequate to instigate an insusceptible reaction, however deficient to cause sickness. To make a weakened immunization, the pathogen is developed in outside host, for example, creatures, embryonated eggs or tissue culture, under conditions that make it less destructive. A few antibodies contain live, lessened microorganisms. A considerable lot of these are dynamic infections that have been developed under conditions that impair their destructive properties, or that utilization firmly related however less risky living beings to deliver a wide resistant reaction. Albeit most weakened antibodies are viral, some are bacterial in nature. The strains are changed to a non-pathogenic frame. A few mutants will be chosen that have a superior capacity to develop in the remote host. These have a tendency to be less harmful for the first host. These antibodies might be given by infusion or by the oral course. A noteworthy preferred standpoint of live infection antibodies is that since they cause disease, the immunization nearly imitates the characteristic boost to the resistant framework.

Exp.: incorporate the viral illnesses yellow fever, measles, rubella, and mumps, and the bacterial ailment typhoid.

**Advantages:**

- Infectious organisms can animate age of memory cell and additionally humoral invulnerable reactions.
- Since these can duplicate in the host, less amounts must be infused to instigate security.
- A single organization of antibody frequently has a high viability in delivering enduring insusceptibility. Numerous supporter measurements isn't required.
- Whole organisms empower reaction to antigens in their normal adaptation. They raise safe reaction to every single defensive antigen.

- Some live antibodies are given orally; such immunizations prompt mucosal insusceptibility and IgA union, which gives more assurance at the ordinary site of section.
- Oral arrangements are more affordable than giving infusions.
- They prompt end of wild sort infection from the group

**Disadvantages:**

- These once in a while return to its destructive shape and cause sickness.
- Live immunizations can't be offered securely to resistant smothered people. Organization of live weakened antibodies to individuals with hindered insusceptible capacity can cause genuine sickness or demise in the immunization beneficiary.
- Since they are live and in light of the fact that their action relies upon their suitability, appropriate capacity is basic

**C. Subunit vaccines:** Presenting an inactivated or constricted miniaturized scale creature to a safe framework, a section of it can make an invulnerable reaction Subunit immunizations contain refined antigens rather than entire life forms. Such a planning comprises of just those antigens that evoke defensive resistance. Subunit antibodies are made out of toxoids, subcellular sections, or surface antigens. Organization of entire life form, as if there should arise an occurrence of pertussis was discovered ominous resistant responses bringing about extreme reactions. The viability of subunit antibodies is expanded by giving them in adjuvants. Adjuvants moderate antigen discharge for a more maintained invulnerable incitement.

Exp. incorporate the subunit antibody against Hepatitis B infection, the infection like molecule (VLP) antibody against human papillomavirus (HPV) that is made out of the viral real capsid protein, the hemagglutinin and neuraminidase subunits of the flu infection and Subunit immunization for torment inoculation.

**Advantages:**

- These are sheltered to invulnerable smothered individuals
- They are less inclined to initiate reactions.

**Disadvantages:**

- Antigens may not hold their local adaptation, with the goal that antibodies delivered against the subunit may not perceive a similar protein on the pathogen surface.



- Isolated protein does not empower the insusceptible framework and in addition an entire living being immunization.

**D. Peptide vaccines:** A peptide antibody is any peptide which serves to vaccinate a creature against a pathogen. Peptide immunizations are frequently manufactured and impersonate normally happening proteins from pathogens. Peptide immunization comprises of those peptides from the microbial antigen that empowers defensive insusceptibility. Manufactured peptides are delivered via computerized machines instead of by microorganisms. Peptide immunogenicity can be expanded by giving them in ISCOMS, lipid micelles that vehicle the peptides specifically into the cytoplasm of dendritic cells for introduction on Class I MHC. Infused peptides, which are substantially littler than the first infection protein, prompt an IgG reaction.

Example: spf66 anti-malarial vaccine

**Advantages:**

- If the peptide that instigates defensive resistance is recognized, it can be integrated effortlessly on a vast scale.
- It is sheltered and can be directed to resistant inadequate and pregnant people.

**Disadvantage:**

- Poor antigenicity. Peptide pieces don't invigorate the insusceptible framework and in addition an entire life form immunization.
- Since peptides are nearly connected with HLA alleles, a few peptides may not be all around successful at instigating defensive resistance.

**E. Recombinant Vaccines:** The antibodies are delivered utilizing recombinant DNA innovation or hereditary building. Recombinant antibodies are those in which qualities for wanted antigens of an organism are embedded into a vector. Distinctive systems utilized as a part of arrangement are:

- Using the designed vector (e.g., Vaccinia infection) that is communicating wanted antigen as an immunization
- The designed vector (e.g., yeast) is made to express the antigen, such is vector is developed and the antigen is sanitized and infused as a subunit antibody. Other articulation vectors incorporate the microbes *Escherichia coli*, mutant *Salmonella* spp., and BCG.

- Introduction of a change by erasing a segment of DNA with the end goal that they are probably not going to return can make a lessened live immunization.
- Live constricted antibodies can likewise be created by reassortment of genomes of destructive and avirulent strains.
- Genes coding for noteworthy antigens are brought into plants, with the end goal that the natural products created bear outside antigens.

**Examples:**

- Hepatitis B Virus (HBV) antibody is a recombinant subunit immunization. Hepatitis B surface antigen is created from a quality transfected into yeast (*Saccharomyces cerevisiae*) cells and cleansed for infusion.
- Vaccinia infection might be designed to express protein antigens of HIV, rabies and so on. Remote qualities cloned into the viral genome are communicated on the surface of tainted cells in relationship with class I MHC particles.
- The antigen-MHC complex instigates a Tc cell reaction.
- B subunit of cholera poison, the B subunit of warmth labile *E. coli* enterotoxin (LT), and one of the glycoprotein film antigens of the malarial parasite are being created utilizing this strategy.
- *Salmonella typhimurium* built to express antigens of *Vibrio cholerae*.
- Bacille Calmette-Guérin immunization strain designed to express qualities of HIV-1.
- Reassortment of genomes amongst human and avian strains to make Influenza immunization. Human and swine strains to make Rotavirus antibody

**Advantages:**

- Those vectors that are sheltered as well as simple to develop and store can be picked.
- Antigens which don't inspire defensive invulnerability or which evoke harming reactions can be disposed of from the immunization. Case Cholera poison A can be securely expelled from cholera poison.

**Disadvantages:**

- Since the qualities for the coveted antigens must be found, cloned, and communicated effectively in the new vector, the cost of generation is high.
- When designed vaccinia infection is utilized to inoculate, mind must be taken to save safe lacking people

**F. DNA Vaccines:** Like recombinant antibodies, qualities for the coveted antigens are found and cloned. The DNA is infused into the muscle of the creature being immunized, as a rule with a "quality firearm" that utilizes compacted gas to blow the DNA into the muscle cells. DNA can be brought into tissues by assaulting the skin with DNA-covered gold particles. It is likewise conceivable to bring DNA into nasal tissue in nose drops. Some muscle cells express the pathogen DNA to invigorate the invulnerable framework. DNA immunizations have actuated both humoral and cell resistance. These antibodies are still in trial arrange.

**Advantages:**

- DNA is exceptionally steady, it opposes extraordinary temperature and subsequently stockpiling and transport are simple.
- A DNA grouping can be changed effortlessly in the research facility.
- The embedded DNA does not imitate and encodes just the proteins of intrigue
- There is no protein part thus there will be no safe reaction against the vector itself.
- Because of the way the antigen is exhibited, there is a cell-interceded reaction that might be coordinated against any antigen in the pathogen.

**Disadvantages:**

- Potential incorporation of DNA into have genome prompting insertional mutagenesis.
- Induction of immune system reactions: hostile to DNA antibodies might be created against presented DNA.
- Induction of immunologic resistance: The outflow of the antigen in the host may prompt particular nonresponsiveness to that antigen.

**G. Anti-Idiotypic Vaccines:** An antigen restricting site in an immunizer (paratope) is an impression of the three-dimensional structure of part of the antigen (epitope). This one of a kind amino corrosive structure in the neutralizer is known as the idiotypic, which can be considered as a reflection of the epitope in the antigen. Antibodies can be raised against the idiotypic by infusing the neutralizer into another creature. This against idiotypic immune response mirrors some portion of the three dimensional structure of the antigen. This can be utilized as an antibody. At the point when the counter idiotypic immune response is infused into a vaccinee, antibodies (anti-anti-idiotypic antibodies) are framed that perceive a structure like piece of the infection and may conceivably kill the infection.

**Advantage:**

- Antibodies against conceivably critical antigen can be delivered.

**Disadvantage:**

- Only humoral insusceptibility is delivered. There is no cell insusceptibility and poor memory. ID and planning of idiotypes is relentless, concentrated and troublesome.

**H. Conjugate Vaccines:** Conjugate immunizations are essentially created against capsulated microorganisms. While the cleansed capsular antigen can go about as subunit immunization, they invigorate just humoral invulnerability. Certain microscopic organisms have polysaccharide external coats that are ineffectively immunogenic. By connecting these external coats to proteins (e.g., poisons), the safe framework can be directed to perceive the polysaccharide as though it were a protein antigen. Polysaccharide antigens are T free, they create fleeting insusceptibility. Invulnerability to these creatures requires opsonizing antibodies. Newborn children can't mount great T-autonomous reactions to polysaccharide antigens. By covalently connecting the polysaccharides to protein transporters, they are changed over into T-subordinate antigens and defensive resistance is incited.

**Examples:** Haemophilus influenzae HiB polysaccharide is complexed with diphtheria toxoid. Tetramune antibody, which consolidates the lockjaw and diphtheria toxoids, entire cell pertussis immunization, and H. influenzae sort bconjugate immunization.

**I. Toxoid vaccines:** A toxoid is a bacterial poison (normally an exotoxin) whose danger has been inactivated or smothered either by synthetic (formalin) or warmth treatment, while different properties, ordinarily immunogenicity, are kept up. Accordingly, when utilized amid immunization, an invulnerable reaction is mounted and immunological memory is framed against the atomic markers of the toxoid without bringing about poison instigated ailment. Toxoid antibodies are produced using inactivated lethal aggravates that reason sickness as opposed to the smaller scale life form. Toxoids are utilized as immunizations since they instigate a resistant reaction to the first poison or increment the reaction to another antigen since the toxoid markers and poison markers are protected.

**Examples:** the lockjaw toxoid got from the tetanospasmin created by Clostridium tetani and the last caused lockjaw is immunized against by the DTaP immunization. Botulin is created by Clostridium botulinum.

**J. Experimental Vaccines:** various imaginative antibodies are likewise being developed and being used which are recorded beneath

Dendritic cell immunizations join dendritic cells with antigens keeping in mind the end goal to show the antigens to the body's white platelets, accordingly invigorating an insusceptible response. These immunizations have demonstrated some positive preparatory outcomes for treating cerebrum tumors and are additionally tried in dangerous melanoma.

Recombinant Vector ; by joining the physiology of one smaller scale living being and the DNA of the other, resistance can be made against ailments that have complex disease forms.

Immune system microorganism receptor peptide immunizations are a work in progress for a few infections utilizing models of Valley Fever, stomatitis, and atopic dermatitis. These peptides have been appeared to adjust cytokine creation and enhance cell-interceded resistance.

Focusing of distinguished bacterial proteins that are associated with supplement restraint would kill the key bacterial destructiveness instrument.

**K. Heterotypic Vaccines:** Also known as heterologous or "Jennerian" immunizations, these are antibodies that are pathogens of different creatures that either don't cause infection or cause gentle malady in the living being dealt with. The great illustration is Jenner's utilization of cowpox to secure against smallpox. A present case is the utilization of BCG immunization produced using *Mycobacterium bovis* to ensure against human tuberculosis.

---

### 7.3 IMMUNODIAGNOSTICS/SEROLOGY

---

Immunodiagnosics is a symptomatic procedure that uses an antigen-counter acting agent response as their essential methods for location. It is a biochemical test that measures the nearness or grouping of a macromolecule or a little particle in an answer using a neutralizer or an antigen. Serology is the investigation of serum and other organic liquids, for the symptomatic recognizable proof of antibodies in the serum. Such antibodies are regularly framed because of a disease, against other remote proteins, or to one's own proteins i.e. immune system sickness. Serological tests are performed for indicative purposes when a contamination is suspected, by checking a person's blood classification. Serology blood tests

help to determine patients to have certain insusceptible insufficiencies related with the absence of antibodies. There are a few immunodiagnosis strategies that can be utilized relying upon the antibodies being examined. These include: ELISA, agglutination, precipitation, supplement obsession, and fluorescent antibodies.

---

### 7.3.1 ELISA

---

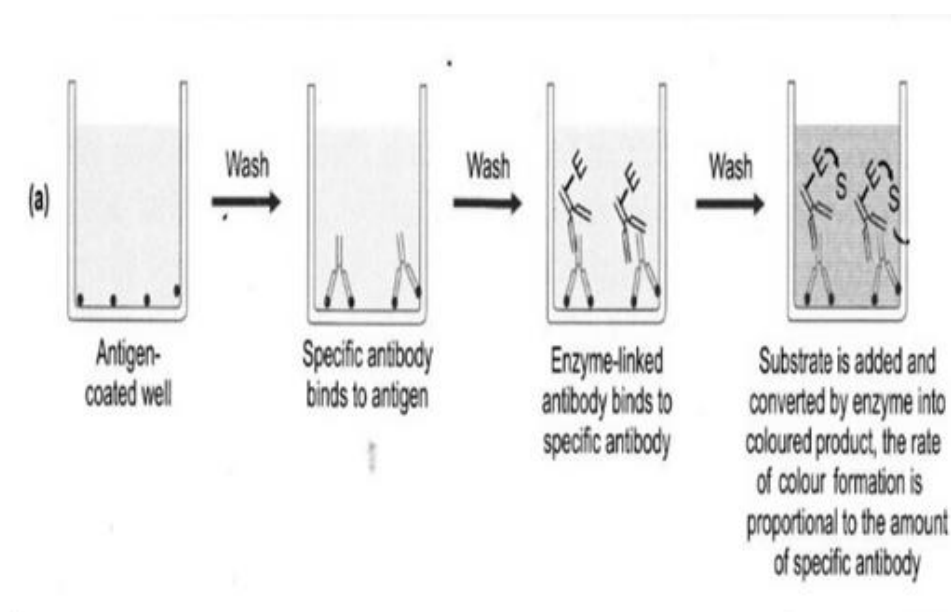
The protein connected immunosorbent test (ELISA) is a test that utilizes antibodies and shading change to distinguish a substance. ELISA is a "wet-lab" sort scientific organic chemistry examine that uses a strong stage catalyst immunoassay (EIA) to distinguish the nearness of a substance, as a rule an antigen, in a fluid example or wet specimen. ELISA is a plate based examines procedure which is utilized for recognizing and evaluating substances, for example, peptides, proteins, antibodies and hormones. A chemical conjugated with a counter acting agent responds with dreary substrate to create a hued item. Such substrate is called chromogenic substrate. Various catalysts have been utilized for ELISA, for example, basic phosphatase, horse radish peroxidase and beta galactosidase. Particular substrate get hydrolysed by compounds to give hued finished result.

As an expository organic chemistry measure, the serum is brooded in a well, and each well contains an alternate serum. Antibodies or antigens introduce in serum are caught by comparing antigen or neutralizer covered on to the strong surface. After some time, the plate is washed to evacuate serum and unbound antibodies or antigens with a progression of wash cradle. To distinguish the bound antibodies or antigens, an auxiliary immune response that is joined to a catalyst, for example, peroxidase or soluble phosphatase is added to each well. After a hatching period, the unbound optional antibodies are washed off. At the point when an appropriate substrate is included, the catalyst responds with it to deliver shading. This shading delivered is quantifiable as a capacity or amount of antigens or antibodies show in the given specimen. The power of shading/optical thickness is measured at 450nm. The force of the shading gives a sign of the measure of antigen or counter acting agent. Traditionally, as different types of immunoassays, the specificity of antigen-neutralizer sort response is utilized in light of the fact that it is anything but difficult to raise a counter acting agent particularly against an antigen.

**Types:**

There are 3 sorts of ELISA on the premise of restricting structure between the Antibody and Antigen ELISA i.e. Coordinate, Sandwich and Competitive.

- (i) **Indirect ELISA:** Antibody can be distinguished or quantitatively controlled by roundabout ELISA. In this procedure, antigen is covered on the microtiter well. Serum or some other example containing essential counter acting agent is added to the microtiter well and permitted to respond with the covered antigen. Any free essential immune response is washed away and the bound counter acting agent to the antigen is identified by including a protein conjugated optional neutralizer that ties to the essential immunizer. Unbound auxiliary immune response is then washed away and a particular substrate for the catalyst is included. Protein hydrolyzes the substrate to shape shaded items. The measure of shaded finished result is measured by spectrophotometric plate perusers that can gauge the absorbance of the considerable number of wells.



**Fig 8.2 Indirect ELISA**

- (i) **Sandwich ELISA:** Antigen can be recognized by sandwich ELISA. In this system, counter acting agent is covered on the microtiter well. A specimen containing antigen is added to the well and permitted to respond with the counter acting agent connected to the well, shaping antigen-neutralizer complex. After the well is washed, a moment

protein connected counter acting agent particular for an alternate epitope on the antigen is added and permitted to respond with the bound antigen. At that point after unbound auxiliary neutralizer is evacuated by washing. At long last substrate is added to the plate which is hydrolyzed by compound to frame hued items.

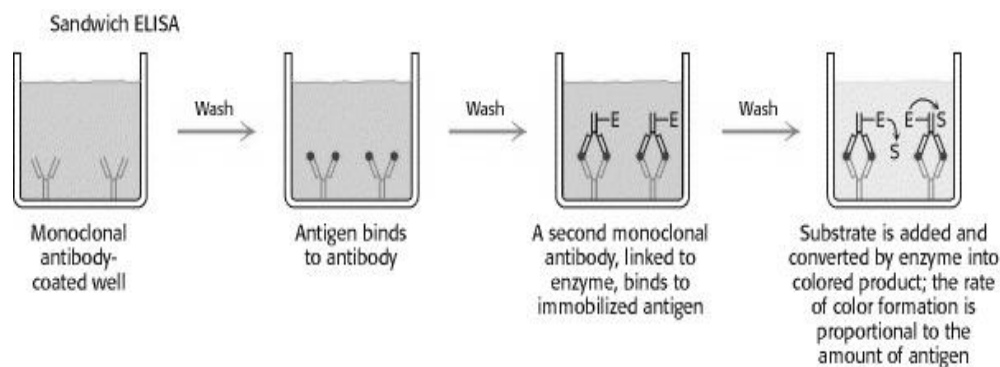


Fig 7.3 Sandwich ELISA

(ii) **Competitive ELISA:** This test is utilized to gauge the grouping of an antigen in a specimen. In this test, counter acting agent is first hatched in arrangement with an example containing antigen. The antigen-counter acting agent blend is then added to the microtitre well which is covered with antigen. The more the antigen exhibit in the example, the less free counter acting agent will be accessible to tie to the antigen-covered well. After the well is washed, chemical conjugated optional neutralizer particular for isotype of the essential immune response is added to decide the measure of essential immunizer bound to the well. The higher the centralization of antigen in the specimen, the lower the absorbance.

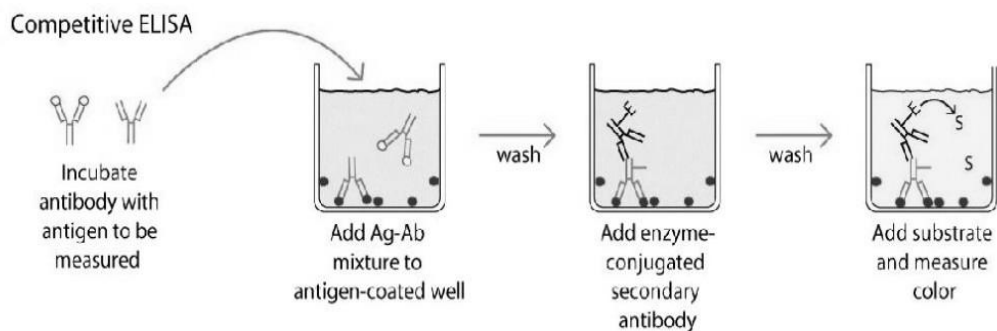


Fig 7.4 Competitive ELISA



The ELISA can be performed to assess either the nearness of antigen or the nearness of counter acting agent in a specimen, it is a valuable instrument for deciding serum immunizer fixations i.e. HIV test and West Nile infection. It is additionally utilized as a part of the nourishment business in recognizing potential sustenance allergens, for example, drain, peanuts, walnuts, almonds, and eggs and as serological blood test for coeliac illness. ELISA is likewise utilized as a part of toxicology as a fast possible screen for specific classes of medications. Alternate employments of ELISA incorporate discovery of Mycobacterium antibodies in tuberculosis, recognition of rotavirus in defecation, identification of hepatitis B markers in serum, location of enterotoxin of E. coli in defecation, location of HIV antibodies in blood tests.

---

### 7.3.2 AGGLUTINATION

---

Agglutination is the bunching of particles. Agglutination is the obvious articulation of the total of antigens and antibodies. Expansive antigens, conveying numerous epitopes, effortlessly sedimented particles, for example, creature cells, erythrocytes, or microscopic organisms when blended with particular antibodies, at fitting temperature and ionic quality arrangement result in cross-connecting the particles, framing a grid like structure seen as clusters with stripped eye. This response which is delicate and particular is named agglutination. Agglutination is a serological response; most basic case of agglutination is the trying for blood gathering. The immune response ties numerous antigen particles and goes along with them, making a vast cross section like complex. Agglutination is amassing together in suspension of cells bearing the antigen (epitopes)/antigen bearing microorganisms, or particles within the sight of particular antibodies called "agglutinins". A counter acting agent is a "Y" formed atom. The two arms of "Y" are the Fab part and has the consolidating site and is made of the hyper-variable locales of the substantial and light chains. The antigenic determinant settles in a separated framed by the joining site of the immune response. So the antigenic determinant fits onto the parted shaped by the "Fab". In the event that the fit is suitable then agglutination will happen. This idea is valid for all antigen (Ag) counter acting agent (Ab) responses. The procedure of agglutination includes two stages. Initial step is sharpening and second is cross section arrangement.

**Sensitization:** It is connection of particular immunizer to comparing antigen; pH, temperature and time of hatching impact the response. IgM antibodies respond best at 4 to 22

degrees C and IgG antibodies respond best at 37 degrees C. Time of hatching can run from 15 to a hour.

**Lattice formation:** Lattice is much the same as a "Jaal". It is shaped by cross connecting between sharpened particles. It requires more investment than sharpening and we might have the capacity to see the outcome with stripped eyes. IgM best at this kind of response due to substantial size however IgG antibodies may require upgrade.

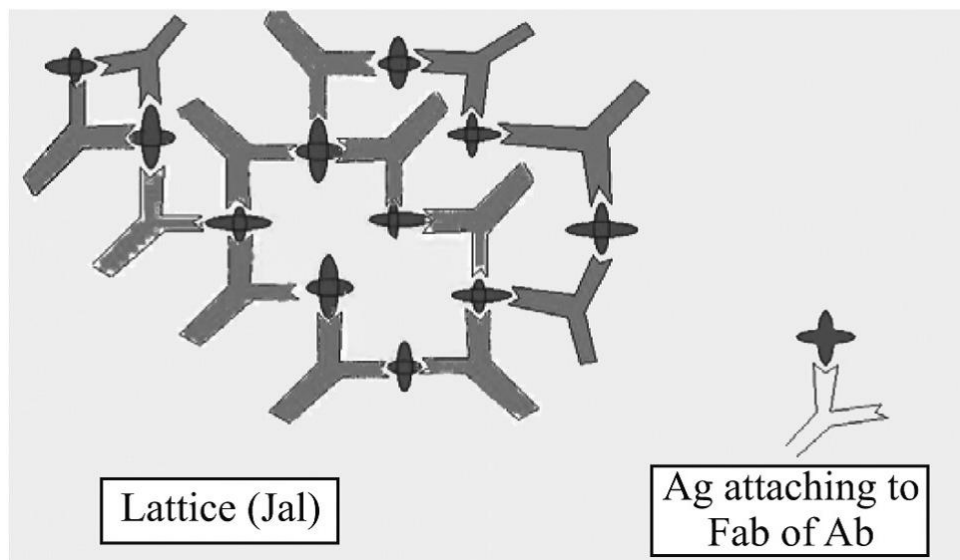


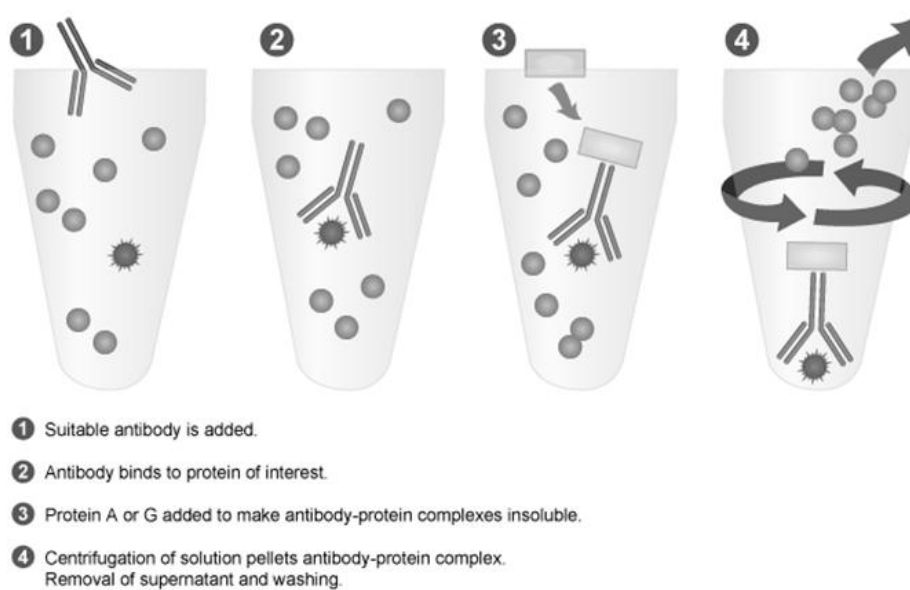
Fig.8.5 agglutination

---

### 7.3.3 IMMUNOPRECIPITATION

---

Immunoprecipitation (IP) is the method of accelerating a protein antigen out of arrangement utilizing a counter acting agent that particularly ties to that specific protein. This procedure can be utilized to disengage and think a specific protein from an example containing a large number of various proteins. Immunoprecipitation requires that the immunizer be coupled to a strong substrate. The two general strategies for immunoprecipitation are the immediate catch technique and the backhanded catch strategy.



*Fig 7.6 Illustration of Immunoprecipitation Process*

- **Direct:** Antibodies that are particular for a specific protein or gathering of proteins are immobilized on a strong stage substrate, for example, superparamagnetic microbeads or on tiny agarose (non-attractive) dots. The globules with bound antibodies are then added to the protein blend, and the proteins that are focused by the antibodies are caught onto the dabs through the antibodies; i.e. they move toward becoming immunoprecipitated
- **Indirect:** Antibodies that are particular for a specific protein, or a gathering of proteins, are added specifically to the blend of protein. The antibodies don't connected to a strong stage bolster yet. The antibodies are allowed to drift around the protein blend and tie their objectives. Over the long haul, the dots covered in protein A/G are added to the blend of counter acting agent and protein. Now, the antibodies, which are currently bound to their objectives, will adhere to the dots.
- **Types of immunoprecipitation**
  - a) **Individual protein immunoprecipitation (IP):** IP includes a counter acting agent that is particular for a known protein to detach that specific protein out of an answer containing various proteins. These arrangements are regularly as a rough lysate of a plant or creature tissue.
  - b) **Protein complex immunoprecipitation (Co-IP):** Immunoprecipitation of in place protein buildings is known as co-immunoprecipitation (Co-IP). Co-IP works by

choosing a counter acting agent that objectives a known protein that is an individual from a bigger complex of proteins. By focusing on this known part with an immune response which makes it conceivable to haul the whole protein complex out of arrangement and along these lines distinguish obscure individuals from the complex. Co-IP is an intense method; this works when the proteins associated with the intricate tie to each other firmly, making it conceivable to pull various individuals from the complex out of arrangement by hooking onto one part with an immunizer. This idea of hauling protein edifices out of arrangement is likewise alluded as a "draw down".

**c) Chromatin immunoprecipitation (ChIP):** (ChIP) is utilized to decide the area of DNA restricting locales on the genome for a specific protein of intrigue. This method gives a photo of the protein– DNA cooperations that happen inside the core of living cells or tissues. In these test DNA-restricting proteins (counting translation elements and histones) in living cells are cross-connected to the DNA that they are authoritative. By utilizing a counter acting agent that is particular to a putative DNA restricting protein, immunoprecipitate; the protein– DNA complex out of cell lysates. The crosslinking is proficient by applying formaldehyde to the cells (or tissue), or DTBP. Following crosslinking, the cells are lysed and the DNA is broken into pieces 0.2– 1.0 kb long by sonication. Now the immunoprecipitation is performed bringing about the cleansing of protein– DNA buildings. The cleansed protein– DNA edifices are then warmed to turn around the formaldehyde cross-connecting of the protein and DNA buildings, enabling the DNA to be isolated from the proteins. To personality and amount the DNA parts disconnected is dictated by PCR.

**d) RNP Immunoprecipitation (RIP):** It is like chromatin immunoprecipitation (ChIP), but instead than focusing on DNA restricting proteins as in ChIP, a RNP immunoprecipitation targets ribonucleoproteins (RNPs). Live cells are first lysed and after that the objective protein and related RNA are immunoprecipitated utilizing a counter acting agent focusing on the protein of intrigue. The sanitized RNA-protein buildings are isolated by playing out a RNA extraction and the recognizable proof of the RNA is dictated by cDNA sequencing or RT-PCR.

**Labeled proteins:** The constraints of all the previously mentioned IP tests is their reliance upon the accessibility of antibodies that uncommonly perceive the objective protein with practically zero cross reactivity with other cell targets. Because of this constraint, numerous proteins can't be IP due to the absence of an accessible counter

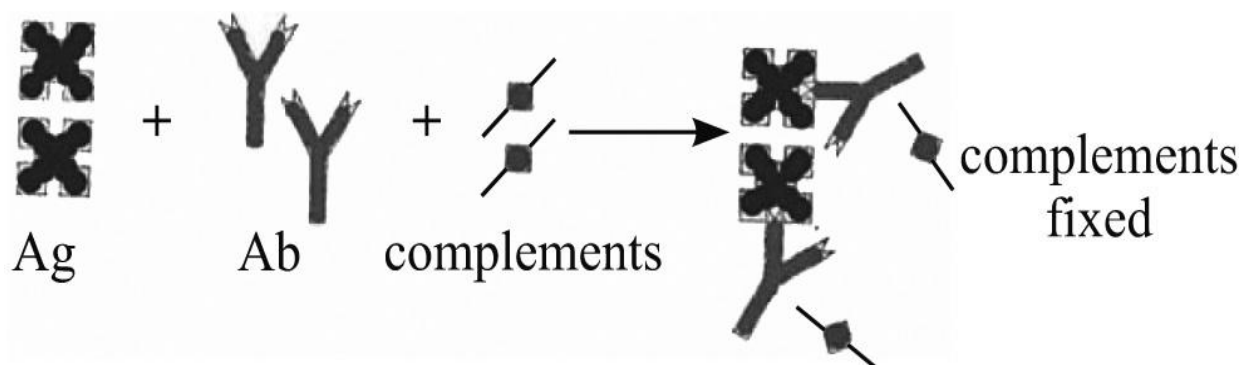
acting agent. To handle this issue, this test utilizes labeling of proteins with an epitope to which a high proclivity counter acting agent is accessible and ectopically communicated in the phone of intrigue. These labels can be either short peptide groupings or fluorescent proteins like Flag, c-Myc, hemagglutinin (HA) and Green fluorescent protein (GFP). The upside of labeled proteins is that same tag can be utilized on numerous occasions on a wide range of proteins and it can be utilized for a similar immunizer each time.

---

### 7.3.4 COMPLEMENT-FIXATION

---

The supplement obsession test is an immunological restorative test that is utilized to distinguish the nearness of either particular immunizer or particular antigen in a patient's serum, in light of supplement obsession. The supplement framework is an arrangement of serum proteins that respond with antigen-counter acting agent buildings. The response happens on a cell surface, it brings about the development of trans-film pores and consequently annihilation of the phone. Most importantly serum is isolated from the patient. Patients normally have distinctive levels of supplement proteins in their serum. To refute any impacts this may have on the test, the supplement proteins in the patient's serum must be devastated and supplanted by a known measure of institutionalized supplement proteins. The serum is warmed such that the greater part of the supplement proteins yet none of the antibodies inside it are obliterated. A known measure of standard supplement proteins is added to the serum. The antigen of intrigue is added to the serum. Sheep red platelets (sRBCs) which have been pre-bound to hostile to sRBC antibodies are added to the serum. The test is viewed as negative if the arrangement turns pink now and positive generally. On the off chance that the patient's serum contains antibodies against the antigen of intrigue, they will tie to the antigen to frame antigen-counter acting agent edifices. The supplement proteins will respond with these buildings and be exhausted. Along these lines when the sRBC-neutralizer buildings are included, there will be no supplement left in the serum. Be that as it may, if no antibodies against the antigen of intrigue are available, the supplement won't be drained and it will respond with the sRBC-immune response buildings, lysing the sRBCs and spilling their substance into the arrangement, along these lines turning the arrangement pink.



*Fig.8.7 Complement fixation*

---

### 7.3.5 FLUORESCENT ANTIBODIES/IMMUNOFLUORESCENCE

---

A fluorescent antibody (FA) otherwise called "immunofluorescence". Immunofluorescence is characterized as a method utilized for identifying an antigen or counter acting agent in an example by coupling its particularly intuitive immunizer or antigen to a fluorescent color/compound, blending with the specimen, and after that watching the response under a bright light fluorescence magnifying lens. Its name gets from the way that it tests the nearness of an antigen with the labeled neutralizer, not at all like western smearing, which utilizes a circuitous technique for recognition, where the essential counter acting agent ties the objective antigen, with an optional immune response coordinated against the essential, and a label connected to the auxiliary immunizer. Fluorescent-neutralizer systems utilize antibodies named with fluorescent colors. Fluorescence is a kind of glow. The fluorescent colors/fluorochromes (having luminescent properties) ingest light of one wavelength and transmit light of an alternate wavelength to a great degree quickly. Consumed light has a higher vitality than the transmitted fluorescence light, so the wavelength of the produced light is longer than that of the excitation light. Blue light is the excitation range and green light is the emanation range. A molecule has electrons each of which has foreordained level of vitality. An electron can retain vitality from a photon of light and end up plainly energized. The vitality level is higher in the energized organize, yet this stage is temperamental. The energized electron radiates fluorescence; the vitality of electron at this stage is lower than

when in energized organize. This creates the amplified fluorescent picture of the protest which can be imagined with fluorescence magnifying instrument.

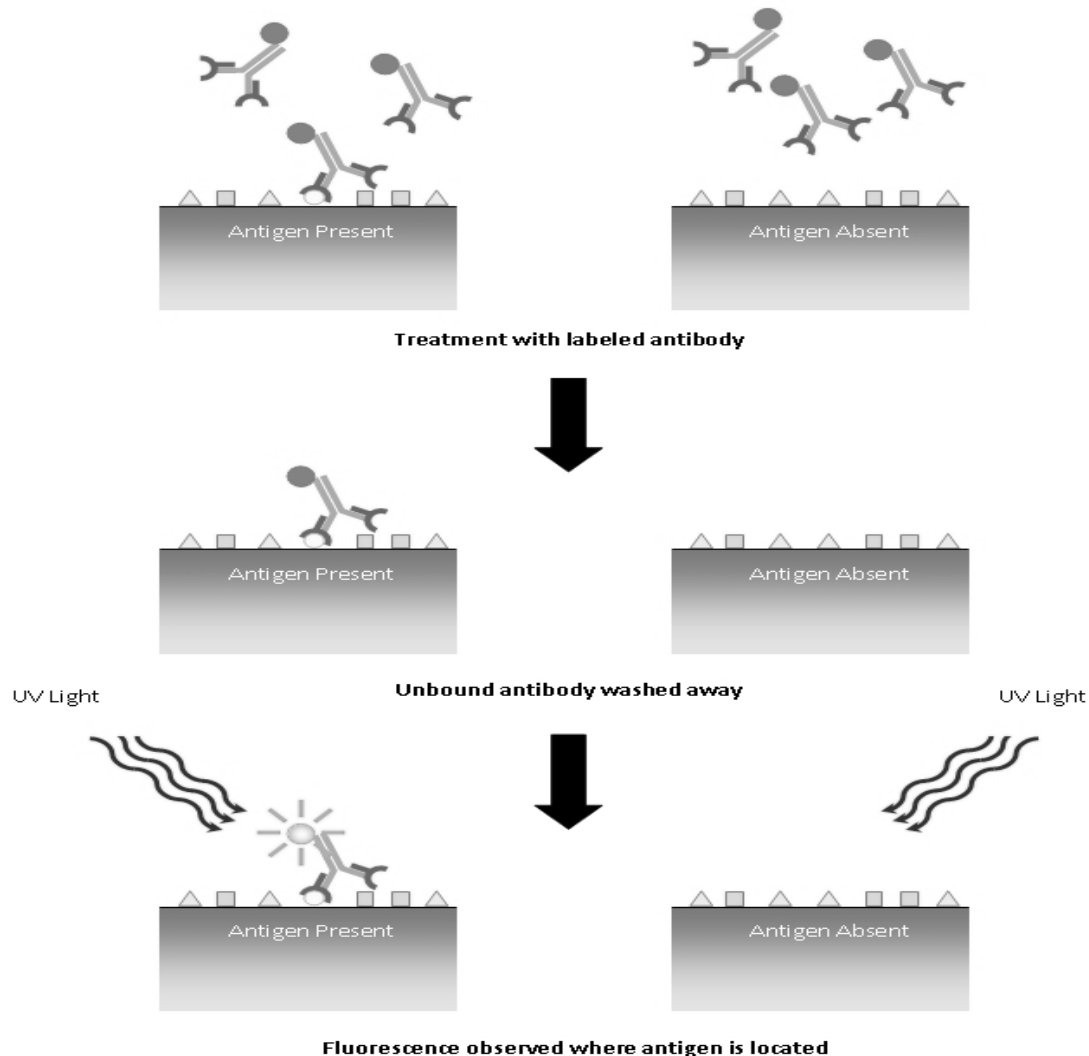


Fig 7.8

It is of two types direct & indirect:

- Direct Fluorescent-Antibody Tests:** Direct fluorescent-antibody tests utilized to distinguish particular microorganisms (antigens). Antibodies coordinated against antigens on the surface of a particular microorganism are marked with fluorescent color. Fluorescent antibodies are hatched with the example and antigen-particular restricting permitted to happen. Overabundance and non-particularly connected antibodies are washed from the specimen. The example is seen with a fluorescence

watcher, regardless of whether a fluorescence magnifying lens or plate peruser or even fluorescence-enacted stream cytometer.

- **Indirect Fluorescent-Antibody Tests:** Indirect fluorescent-counter acting agent tests are utilized to exhibit the nearness of antibodies against a particular antigen in serum. Antigen or the microorganism itself is hatched with the patient's serum. Overabundance serum is washed away, leaving just antibodies particular for the antigen (or antigenic segment of the microorganism) exhibit in the patient's serum bound. The example is then brooded with antibodies named with fluorescent color that are particular for human antibodies (fluorescent aniti-human neutralizer antibodies), (infuse human immunoglobulins into another species and it will create against human immunoglobulin antibodies). The example is seen with a fluorescence watcher, precisely like the immediate counter acting agent tests.

---

## 7.4 IMMUNOTHERAPY

---

Immunotherapy is the "treatment of ailment by initiating, upgrading, or stifling a resistant reaction. Immunotherapy is treatment that uses certain parts of a man's invulnerable framework to battle sicknesses. Immunotherapy is treatment that is intended to saddle the capacity of the body's resistant framework to battle contamination or illness. Immunotherapy may deliver an invulnerable reaction to ailment or improve the safe framework's protection from dynamic maladies, for example, malignancy. Some of the time alluded to as natural treatment, immunotherapy regularly utilizes substances alluded to as organic reaction modifiers (BRMs). The body typically just delivers little measures of these BRMS in light of contamination or malady, however in the research center, a lot of these BRMs can be created with a specific end goal to give a treatment. Contingent upon the sort of treatment, different reactions can emerge because of utilizing immunotherapy. Reactions incorporate influenza like side effects, muscle hurts, fever, craving misfortune, shortcoming, loose bowels, queasiness and retching. A rash may create and a few people wound or drain effortlessly. These symptoms are for the most part here and now.

Eg. of immunotherapies incorporate monoclonal antibodies, interferon, interleukin-2 (IL-2), and settlement invigorating components CSF, GM-CSF and G.



Immunotherapies intended to inspire or open up an insusceptible reaction are delegated enactment immunotherapies, while immunotherapies that lessen or smother are named concealment immunotherapies.

---

### **7.4.1 ACTIVATION IMMUNOTHERAPIES**

---

An initiation immunotherapy is one that either actuates or enhances an invulnerable reaction. These are of following strategies:

---

### **7.4.2 FOR CANCER**

---

Cancer immunotherapy endeavors to invigorate the resistant framework to devastate tumors. Dendritic cells or DCs are powerful antigen-creating cells that can sharpen T cells to both new and review antigens. The objectives of DC based immunotherapy in tumor are to prime particular antitumor resistance by creating effector lymphocytes (e.g. CD4+ T cells and CD8+ T cells) that objective, assault and obliterate tumors.

---

### **7.4.3 DENDRITIC CELL BASED IMMUNOTHERAPY**

---

Dendritic cells are fortified to actuate a cytotoxic reaction towards an antigen. Dendritic cells, a kind of antigen showing cell, are gathered from the individual requiring the immunotherapy. These cells are then either beat with an antigen or tumor lysate[17] or transfected with a viral vector, making them show the antigen. Upon transfusion into the individual, these enacted cells introduce the antigen to the effector lymphocytes (CD4+ assistant T cells, cytotoxic CD8+ T cells and B cells). This starts a cytotoxic reaction against tumor cells communicating the antigen (against which the versatile reaction has now been prepared).

---

### **7.4.4 T CELL BASED RECEPTIVE IMMUNOTHERAPY**

---

Another immunotherapy strategy that outfits a patient's resistant framework keeping in mind the end goal to battle infection is assenting cell treatment (ACT). This includes building a patient's T cells with the goal that they can perceive and assault tumor cells. Immune system microorganisms are gathered from the patient's blood and after that hereditarily built to deliver cell surface receptors alluded to as illusory antigen receptors (CARs). Autos empower the T cells to perceive particular antigens exhibit on the surface of malignant cells. The T cells then increase in the body and by utilizing their hereditarily designed receptor; they assault cells that present the tumor particular antigen on their surface.

---

#### **7.4.5 IMMUNE UPGRADE TREATMENT**

---

- It utilizes a man's own particular fringe blood-determined common executioner cells, cytotoxic T lymphocytes and other applicable resistant cells are extended in vitro and afterward reinfused.
- Genetically designed T cells: These phones are made by reaping T cells and afterward contaminating the T cells with a retrovirus that contains a duplicate of a T cell receptor (TCR) quality that is specific to perceive tumor antigens. The infection coordinates the receptor into the T cells' genome. The phones are extended non-particularly as well as invigorated. The cells are then reinfused and deliver a safe reaction against the tumor cells.

---

#### **7.4.6 SUPPRESSION IMMUNOTHERAPIES**

---

Therapies that lessen an invulnerable reaction to treat hypersensitivity or immune system ailments are alluded to as concealment immunotherapies. Safe concealment hoses an irregular invulnerable reaction in immune system ailments or lessens an ordinary insusceptible reaction to avoid dismissal of transplanted organs or cells. These are of following techniques:

---

#### **7.4.7 IMMUNOTHERAPY FOR SENSITIVITY**

---

Immunotherapy is utilized to treat hypersensitivities. Hypersensitivity medications treat unfavorably susceptible side effects, immunotherapy decrease affectability to allergens, diminishing its seriousness. It delivers long haul benefits. Immunotherapy is somewhat

powerful in a few people and ineffectual in others, yet it offers sensitivity sufferers an opportunity to lessen or stop their side effects. The treatment is shown for individuals who are to a great degree unfavorably susceptible or who can't evade particular allergens. Immunotherapy is for the most part not demonstrated for sustenance or therapeutic sensitivities. This treatment is especially helpful for individuals with hypersensitive rhinitis or asthma. The main measurements contain small measures of the allergen or antigen. Measurements increment after some time, as the individual moves toward becoming desensitized. Allergen immunotherapy works by smothering this second stage reaction and by lessening the primary stage reaction by forestalling allergen-driven Th2 reactions, which incorporates a fall in the levels of interleukin. Allergen immunotherapy brings about a long haul diminish in serum allergen-particular IgE levels and furthermore that the early stage reaction is essentially decreased.

---

#### **7.4.8 IMMUNOTHERAPY FOR TRANSPLANT PATIENTS**

---

All patients who get an organ or tissue transplant (allograft) need to take immunosuppressive treatments to keep the body perceiving the organ as remote and propelling a resistant reaction to assault it. Allogeneic transplant won't be fruitful unless the patient's invulnerable framework is downregulated and this downregulation should likewise be kept up in the long haul. Immunosuppressive treatment downregulate the insusceptible framework such that with or without different reactions from those to the allograft stay in place.

---

#### **7.4.9 IMMUNOTHERAPY FOR AUTOIMMUNE SICKNESS**

---

Disorders of the invulnerable framework make the insusceptible framework turn out to be either overactive or underactive. In situations where the resistant framework is overactive, it produces antibodies which assault and harm the body's own tissues as opposed to battling contamination and this is named as immune system sickness. Immune system issue that can be treated with immunosuppressant treatments incorporate rheumatoid joint pain and fiery inside ailment.

---

#### 7.4.10 RHEUMATOID JOINT PAIN

---

In rheumatoid joint pain, antibodies are delivered by the safe framework that assaults the linings in joints. Individuals with direct to extreme rheumatoid joint pain in this way as a rule need to take pharmaceutical. In cases, the disease modifying antirheumatic drug (DMARD) methotrexate and if that neglects to work, an option DMARD, for example, hydroxychloroquine or sulfasalazine might be endorsed. In situations where DMARDs neglect to mitigate manifestations, a suppressive immunotherapy is suggested. These built proteins square specific parts of the resistant reaction that prompts aggravation and moderate or end the movement of rheumatoid joint inflammation.

---

### 7.5 SUMMARY

---

Vaccine is arrangement of pathogenic specialists or its constituent part, which can be managed with the target of animating defensive resistance. Immunizations that are usually utilized incorporate weakened antibody, inactivated antibody, toxoid immunization and polysaccharide immunization. Constricted immunizations utilize debilitated pathogen to invigorate insusceptible arrangement of the antibody. Since, pathogens are constricted or debilitated they once in a while cause harm. Inactivated antibody utilize slaughtered pathogen while toxoid immunization utilize synthetically adjusted poison subsidiary that has lost danger yet at the same time holds immunogenicity. Capsular polysaccharides of microscopic organisms have likewise been utilized as immunization with fantastic outcomes. In making recombinant antigen immunization, quality coding for antigen is brought into have cell (yeast, microorganisms) utilizing recombinant DNA innovation. The protein is then communicated and gathered and utilized as immunization. Live vector immunization (bacterial or viral) fill in as wellspring of antigen inside the antibody. Antigen qualities are presented in weakened microorganisms or safe infection and are tainted into the host framework. Antigens shaped and discharged by these vectors empower both B-cell and T-cell intervened resistance. DNA antibody includes coordinate presentation of antigen quality into muscle cell or antigen displaying cell. Target quality as quality gold molecule adduct is besieged on the cell by quality weapon. Once inside, quality is communicated and antigen

showed on have cell MHC that empowers invulnerable framework. A perfect immunization should (a) furnish long lasting resistance with a solitary measurement, (b) be non-intrusive (c) invigorate both humoral and cell-interceded insusceptibility (d) be shabby and simple to store and transport. Agglutination is utilized for analysis of ailments in lab either utilizes the particulate or solvent antigens. The pointer framework is shaped by sheep red platelets covered with rabbit immunizer to sheep red cells (amboceptors). The sheep red platelets will lyse within the sight of supplement. There exists alteration of supplement obsession test- Indirect supplement obsession test, Congulating supplement retention test, Immune adherence, Immobilization test, Cytolytic tests. Fluorescence colors are conjugated with antibodies and these marked antibodies are utilized as tests to recognize and find the antigen particular to this neutralizer. Coordinate immunofluorescence is utilized less much of the time as the counter acting agent against the atom of intrigue is synthetically conjugated to a fluorescent color, so for each antigen to be distinguished, the particular neutralizer should be conjugated with FITC. In backhanded fluorescence the neutralizer particular for the atom of intrigue (called the essential counter acting agent) is unlabeled, and a moment hostile to immunoglobulin immunizer coordinated toward the consistent bit of the main counter acting agent (called the optional counter acting agent) is labeled with the fluorescent color. Aberrant fluorescence is utilized all the more normally as the labeled auxiliary neutralizer can be utilized to distinguish a wide range of antigens. Nonetheless, the essential counter acting agent should be particular for the antigen to be distinguished. Applications incorporate; Resolution of points of interest to the atomic level, Study a cell populace for reasonability (some fluorophores infiltrate live cells and not the dead cells as of now clarified under microscopy), Detect particular cells of enthusiasm for an example/material utilizing FISH methods.

---

## 7.6 GLOSSARY

---

**Ablative treatment:** the use of heat, extreme cold, lasers, or a chemical to destroy cancerous tissue.

**Active immunity:** The production of antibodies against a specific disease by the immune system

**Antibiotic:** A substance that fights bacteria.

**Antitoxin:** Antibodies capable of destroying toxins generated by microorganisms including viruses and bacteria

**Antiviral:** any medicine capable of destroying or weakening a virus

**Array:** Diagnostic modality involving conduction of multiple unique tests for different biomarkers on the same testing medium

**Asymptomatic infection:** The presence of an infection without symptoms.

**Attenuated vaccine:** A vaccine in which live virus is weakened through chemical or physical processes in order to produce an immune response without causing the severe effects of the disease

**Biomarkers:** are proteins or genes that provide a more detailed understanding of the tumor, its prognosis, and the potential response to treatment.

**Biopsy:** a procedure in which a doctor removes a small sample of tissue

**Booster shots:** Additional doses of a vaccine needed periodically to "boost" the immune system

**Chemotherapy:** often called "chemo," is a treatment with drugs that kill cancer cells

**Cholangiopancreatography:** is the use of endoscopy combined with fluoroscopy to diagnose cancerous tumors in the pancreas

**Combination vaccine:** Two or more vaccines administered in a single dose in order to reduce the number of shots given

**Conjugate vaccine:** The joining together of two compounds (usually a protein and polysaccharide) to increase a vaccine's effectiveness.

**Deltoid:** A muscle in the upper arm where shots are usually given

**Dx:** Dx is the abbreviation for diagnostics

**Efficacy rate:** A measure used to describe how good a vaccine is at preventing disease

**Endoscopic ultrasound:** uses a thin, flexible tube called an endoscope that has a built-in miniature ultrasound probe to explore the digestive tract and create visual images with sound waves.

**Fluorescence in situ hybridization:** or FISH, is a screening test that can be performed on breast cancer tissue removed during a biopsy

**Hematology:** The scientific study of blood and blood-forming tissues.

**Hormone-lowering therapy:** also called androgen deprivation therapy or androgen suppression therapy, to reduce levels of male hormones (androgens) in the body.

**Immune modulators:** are drugs used to “step on the gas” of the immune response, allowing the body to respond more aggressively to cancer

**Immunization:** The process by which a person or animal becomes protected against a disease

**Immunoassay:** Tests used to detect or quantify a specific substance, the analyte, in a blood or body fluid sample, using an immunological reaction.

**Immunochemistry:** The study of the chemical properties of antigens and antibodies, complement, and T cell receptors

**Immunodiagnostics:** The use of specific antibodies to measure a substance

**Immunosuppression:** When the immune system is unable to protect the body from disease

**Immunotherapy:** one of the most promising and scientifically advanced cancer treatments

**Interferons:** IFN, type of cytokine that boosts the ability of certain immune cells to attack invaders like viruses or cancer cells.

**Interleukins:** IL, are cytokines that help immune cells grow and divide more quickly

**Investigational vaccine:** A vaccine that has been approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for use in clinical trials on humans

**Melanoma:** is a type of skin cancer that begins in skin cells called melanocytes

**Polysaccharide vaccines:** Vaccines that are composed of long chains of sugar molecules that resemble the surface of certain types of bacteria

**Quarantine:** The isolation of a person or animal who has a disease (or is suspected of having a disease) in order to prevent further spread of the disease

**Thimerosal:** Thimerosal is a mercury-containing preservative used in some vaccines and other products

**Titer:** The detection of antibodies in blood through a laboratory test

**Tumor:** is an abnormal lump or mass of tissue

**Vaccination:** Injection of a killed or weakened infectious organism in order to prevent the disease

**Vaccine:** A product that produces immunity therefore protecting the body from the disease

**Vaccinia:** A virus related to the smallpox and cowpox viruses, which is used in smallpox vaccine

---

## 7.7 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTION

---

### Multiple Choice Questions

1. DNA vaccines can be effective if they
  - A. can be engineered to contain DNA motifs that have an adjuvant effect.
  - B. encode expression of antigen.
  - C. encode expression of appropriate cytokines.
  - D. all of the above.
2. Polysaccharides are rarely effective vaccines by themselves because they ...
  - A. have repeating B cell epitopes.
  - B. lack classical T cell epitopes.
  - C. only induce CTL responses.
  - D. are usually the same in people and bacteria.
3. Vaccines may fail to induce a protective response because they induce ...
  - A. humoral immunity when cell mediated immunity is needed.
  - B. IgM but not IgG or IgA.
  - C. production of IL-4 when IFN $\gamma$  is needed
  - D. all of the above.
4. Most chemotherapeutic drugs kill cells by damaging
  - A. DNA
  - B. Protein
  - C. Nearby blood vessels
  - D. All of these
5. Sigmoidoscopy is a test for



- A. Breast cancer
- B. Colon cancer
- C. Cervical cancer
- D. Brain cancer

**Answers:**

- 1. All of the above
- 2. Lack classical T cell epitopes
- 3. All of the above
- 4. DNA
- 5. Colon cancer

**Fill in the blanks:**

- 1. The process of introduction of weakened pathogen into human body is called\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. The first vaccine was developed by \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_can is accelerated by a previous graft from the same donor.
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_is technique used for detecting antigen/antibody by coupling them with fluorescent dye.
- 5. Attachment of specific antibody to antigen is\_\_\_\_\_.

**Answer:**

- 1. Vaccination
- 2. Louis Pasteur
- 3. Graft rejection
- 4. Immunofluorescence
- 5. Sensitization

**Short Answer Type Questions**

- 1. What do you understand by the term complement?

Ans. It is an immunological medical test that is used to detect the presence of either specific antibody or specific antigen in a patient's serum.

- 2. Name auto fluorescent structures?

Ans. Auto fluorescent structures are Mitochondria, riboflavin & collagen.

- 3. Define ELISA?

Ans. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay

- 4. What is Live Attenuated Vaccine?

Ans. The vaccines which are composed of live, reduced in virulence microorganisms that cause a limited infection in their hosts are termed as live attenuated vaccine.

- 5. Give examples of tagged proteins?

Ans. Flag, c-Myc, hemagglutinin (HA) & Green fluorescent protein (GFP).

### Long Answers Type Questions

1. Explain vaccines & its types in detail with examples?
2. Define serology with the help of various techniques?
3. Describe immunoprecipitation & its types?
4. What is immunotherapy; explain in brief with suitable examples?
5. What is immunofluorescence? Describe the different types of immunofluorescence techniques?

---

## 7.8 REFERENCES

---

1. Janeway, Charles A., Travers, Jr., Paul, Walport, Mark and Shlomchik, Mark J. (2001). Immunobiology, 5<sup>th</sup> edition. Garland Science, New York.
2. Kind, Thomas J., Goldsby, Richard A., Osborne, Barbara Anne. and Kuby, Janis. (2007). Kuby Immunology. New York: W.H. Freeman.
3. Lydyard, P.M., Whelan, A. and Fanger, M.W., (2004). Immunology. Garland Science/BIOS Scientific Publishers Limited

## Block III: Toxicology

---

### UNIT 8: TOXIN

---

#### CONTENTS

- 8.1 Objectives
  - 8.2 Toxins
  - 8.3 Different kind of toxins
  - 8.4 Environmental toxins
  - 8.5 Sources of toxic agents
  - 8.6 Synthetic organic compounds
  - 8.7 Natural occurring toxins
    - 8.7.1 Bio toxins
    - 8.7.2 Inorganic chemicals
  - 8.8 Dose-response relationship
  - 8.9 Rout of entery
  - 8.10 Environmental movement
  - 8.11 Fate of toxins
  - 8.12 Mode of actions
  - 8.13 Natural Poisons
    - 8.13.1 selenium in grain
    - 8.13.2 Methyl mercury in seafood
    - 8.13.3 Prussic acid in cherry, apple and peach pits
    - 8.13.4 Hypericin in St.John's wort
    - 8.13.5 Goitrogens (glucosinolates) in Brassica spp.
    - 8.13.6 Frucic in rape
  - 8.14 Summary
  - 8.15 Glossary
  - 8.16 Self assessment questions and possible answers
  - 8.17 References
-

---

## 8.1 OBJECTIVES

---

The objectives of the study of Toxicology will let the students to:

- Define toxicology- The study of toxic substances is known as Toxicology(effect, problem)
- What are toxins their types and sources
- Natural occurring toxins and their rout of entry into human body
- Dose- responses of toxins and their relationship

---

## 8.2 TOXINS

---

A term toxin (from Ancient Greek: τοξικόν toxikon) is used for a harmful substance delivered inside living cells or life forms; manufactured toxicants made by counterfeit procedures are subsequently prohibited. The term was first utilized by organic chemist **Ludwig Brieger (1849– 1919)**.

Toxins can be little atoms, peptides, or proteins that are equipped for causing infection on contact with or retention by body tissues cooperating with natural macromolecules, for example, compounds or cell receptors. Poisons fluctuate significantly in their poisonous quality, running from generally minor, (for example, a honey bee sting) to very quickly lethal, (for example, botulinum poison).

Poisons are regularly recognized from other synthetic operators by their technique for creation—the word poison does not indicate strategy for conveyance (contrast and venom and the smaller significance of toxin—all substances that can likewise make unsettling influences living beings). It essentially implies it is an organically created harm. There was a progressing expressed question between NATO (**North Atlantic Treaty Organization**) and the Warsaw Pact (**Treaty of Friendship, Co-operation, and Mutual Assistance**) about whether to call a poison a natural or synthetic operator, in which the NATO decided on natural specialist, and the Warsaw Pact, as most different nations on the planet, for concoction specialist.

As per an International Committee of the Red Cross survey of the Biological Weapons Convention, "Poisons are noxious results of living beings; dissimilar to natural operators,

they are lifeless and not fit for duplicating themselves", and "Since the marking of the Convention, there host been no question among the gatherings in regards to the meaning of organic specialists or poisons".

As indicated by Title 18 of the United States Code, "the expression "poison" implies the poisonous material or result of plants, creatures, microorganisms(including, however not constrained to, microscopic organisms, infections, parasites, rickettsiae or protozoa), or irresistible substances, or a recombinant or incorporated atom, whatever their starting point and technique for generation".

A fairly casual wording of individual poisons relates them to the anatomical area where their belongings are generally prominent:

- Hemotoxin, causes decimation of red platelets (hemolysis)
- Phototoxin, causes hazardous photosensitivity

---

### 8.3 DIFFERENT KIND OF TOXINS

---

There are for the most part four sorts of dangerous substances; synthetic, organic, physical and radiation:

- Chemical toxicants incorporate inorganic substances, for example, lead, mercury, hydrofluoric corrosive, and chlorine gas, and natural mixes, for example, methyl liquor, most solutions, and toxic substances from living things. While some feebly radioactive substances, for example, uranium, are additionally synthetic toxicants, all the more unequivocally radioactive materials like radium are not, their unsafe impacts (radiation harming) being caused by the ionizing radiation created by the substance as opposed to compound connections with the substance itself.
- Disease-causing microorganisms and parasites are poisonous in an expansive sense, however are for the most part called pathogens as opposed to toxicants. The natural danger of pathogens can be hard to gauge in light of the fact that the "limit dosage" might be a solitary creature. Hypothetically one infection, bacterium or worm can repeat to cause a genuine contamination. In any case, in a host with an in place safe framework the inborn danger of the living being is adjusted by the host's capacity to battle back; the compelling harmfulness is then a mix of the two sections of the

relationship. Sometimes, e.g. cholera, the ailment is mostly caused by a nonliving substance emitted by the living being, instead of the life form itself. Such nonliving organic toxicants are for the most part called poisons if delivered by a microorganism, plant, or parasite, and venoms if created by a creature.

- Physical toxicants are substances that, because of their physical nature, meddle with organic procedures. Cases incorporate coal tidy, asbestos fibbers or finely partitioned silicon dioxide, all of which can at last be lethal if breathed in. Destructive chemicals have physical lethality since they crush tissues; however they're not straightforwardly toxic unless they meddle specifically with natural movement. Water can go about as a physical toxicant if taken in to a great degree high measurement in light of the fact that the centralization of essential particles diminishes drastically if there's an excess of water in the body. Asphyxiant gasses can be viewed as physical toxicants since they act by dislodging oxygen in nature however they are idle, not synthetically lethal gasses.
- Radiation poisons are of a few sorts of a couple of sorts of particles and beams transmitted by radioactive material, high-voltage equipment, nuclear reactions, and stars. The sorts that are commonly basic to your prosperity are alpha particles, beta particles, x bars, and gamma pillars. Alpha and beta particles are nearly nothing, fast moving bits of iotas that a radioactive atom transmits when it changes into another substance. X bars and gamma bars are sorts of electromagnetic radiation. These radiation particles and shafts pass on enough imperativeness to pound out electrons from particles and molecules, (for instance, water, protein, and DNA) that they hit or go close. This system is called ionization, which is the reason this radiation is called "ionizing radiation."
- On a more extensive scale, poisons might be named either exotoxin, being discharged by a life form, or endotoxins, that are discharged for the most part when microorganisms are lysed.

Related terms are:

- Toxoid, debilitated or smothered poison
- Venom, poisons in the feeling of utilization by specific sorts of creatures

---

## 8.4 ENVIRONMENTAL TOXINS

---

The expression "ecological poison" can here and there unequivocally incorporate engineered contaminants, for example, modern contaminations and other misleadingly made poisonous substances. As this negates most formal meanings of the expression "poison", it is vital to affirm what the scientist implies while experiencing the term outside of microbiological settings.

Ecological poisons from evolved ways of life that might be risky to human wellbeing include:

- Paralytic shellfish harming (PSP)
- Amnesic shellfish harming (ASP)
- Diarrheal shellfish harming (DSP)
- Neurotoxin shellfish harming (NSP)

As said some time recently, there's a wide assortment of toxicants in the earth. To better comprehend them, we can place them into particular classifications that depend on the sorts of issues they cause. Cancer-causing agents are most likely the best-known toxicant in light of the fact that these are tumour causing chemicals. Tobacco smoke falls into this class as it contains more than 4,000 chemicals, a considerable lot of which cause malignancy.

a) **Mutagens** are change causing chemicals. At the point when living beings are presented to a mutagen, it actually changes their DNA, prompting malignancy and different issue. X-beams are outstanding mutagens. Teratogens are chemicals that reason mischief to unborn infants. The name of this toxicant originates from the Greek word *teras*, which implies beast.

These chemicals cause birth absconds amid improvement in the womb. Thalidomide was utilized as a part of the 1950s as a resting pill and to avoid sickness amid pregnancy, however ended up being an extremely hurtful teratogen. Indeed, even a solitary measurement is sufficiently effective to cause serious birth absconds in kids.

- b) **Allergens** are chemicals that fortify over activity in the invulnerable framework. When you are presented to allergens, your body goes into overdrive, setting off an invulnerable reaction to attempt and dispose of the allergen. This is the reason dust and tidy reason side effects that are like being debilitated.
- c) **Neurotoxins** are chemicals that assault the sensory system. These incorporate overwhelming metals, similar to lead and mercury, and additionally pesticides and synthetic weapons. Neurotoxins can prompt side effects like slurred discourse, loss of muscle control and even passing.
- d) **Endocrine disrupters** are chemicals that upset the endocrine framework in life forms and regularly originate from professionally prescribed medications and chemicals in plastics. The endocrine framework is otherwise called the hormone framework, and this piece of your body is the thing that manages development, advancement, sexual development, cerebrum work and even hunger.

Toxicants that disturb hormone working can prompt some major issues since they so intently look like genuine hormones in your body. Reptiles and creatures of land and water are particularly delicate to endocrine disrupters and introduction regularly prompts feminization of male creatures. This may appear like a great deal to recall! In any case, on the off chance that you look carefully, you'll see that the name of the toxicant depicts the impact it has on living beings, which encourages us comprehend these toxicants better.

---

## 8.5 SOURCES OF TOXIC AGENTS

---

We are encompassed by manufactured chemicals and experience them incalculable circumstances consistently. Plastics, family unit cleaners, solvents, cleansers, beautifying agents and aromas are on the whole toxicants. So are anti-infection agents, physician recommended drugs, steroids, sustenance added substances, additives and different things we ingest. Pesticides, herbicides and composts are likewise toxicants.

In spite of the fact that poisons originated from amny sources, they tend to travel through nature in certain ways. Toxicants may discover their way into sea-going framework as they escape by spill over from substantial ranges of land. Since the water frameworks are littler



than the land that provided the contaminants, the poisons have a tendency to get packed in the water.

Sources of toxicants discharged to nature

**A. Point sources**—discrete, identifiable, particular geographic area of synthetic release, a specific stationary place of passage of chemicals into nature

- (i) such as: – a particular smoke stack, a specific pipe releasing profluent into an accepting stream, a processing plant, a sewage treatment plant, a synthetic waste dump, a landfill, an oil or concoction spill
- (ii) often generally simple to decide mass emanation rates, especially for point sources that are routinely observed for consistence with natural directions
- (iii) however, analytical measurement may be difficult due to: trace toxicant concentrations in complex effluent chemical mixtures, difficulties in determination of all relevant reactive metabolites or chemical forms, and temporal fluctuations in toxicant concentrations and flow rates, also many non-regulated/monitored toxicants of potential concern
- (iv) often relatively easy to monitor, regulate, and control point source emissions of toxicants into the environment
- (v) earliest and most well developed regulatory policy/law and pollution control technologies aimed at point sources

**B. Non-point sources** – not a discrete, easily identifiable place of entry of chemicals into environment

- (i) some examples
  - diffuse emissions over widespread geographic areas – farm fields in rural areas, lawns and streets in urban areas
  - multiple mobile sources of emissions – vehicles
  - multiple, dispersed stationary sources – septic tanks
  - atmospheric deposition from point sources and vehicle emissions
- (ii) very difficult to accurately determine mass emission rates

- (iii) very difficult to monitor, regulate, and control non-point source emissions of toxicants
- (iv) current area of concern regarding needed development of regulatory policy/law and pollution control technologies.

---

## 8.6 SYNTHETIC ORGANIC COMPOUNDS

---

The table beneath records some normal working environment materials that meet at least one of the criteria to be viewed as "lethal" and some of potential wellbeing impacts related with that synthetic. Remember that harmful materials can likewise be found in buyer items that come into the home - dependably read the notice names and safe utilize directions before utilizing any items.

Organic compound	Potential Health Effects/Symptoms Associated with Toxicity (Note: not a complete listing of symptoms)
Methylene chloride	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Mild central nervous system depressant. May cause headache, nausea, dizziness, drowsiness, in coordination and confusion, unconsciousness and death.</li><li>• Causes skin and eye irritation.</li></ul>
Isopropyl alcohol (2-propanol)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Mild central nervous system depressant. High vapour concentrations may cause headache, nausea, dizziness, drowsiness, in coordination, and confusion. Very high exposures may result in unconsciousness and death.</li><li>• May be irritating to the respiratory tract.</li><li>• Causes eye irritation.</li><li>• Swallowing or vomiting of the liquid may cause aspiration (breathing) into the lungs.</li></ul>
Acetone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Mild central nervous system depressant.</li><li>• Very high concentrations may cause headache, nausea, dizziness, drowsiness, in coordination and confusion.</li></ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Causes eye irritation.</li> <li>• Swallowing or vomiting of the liquid may result in aspiration into the lungs.</li> </ul>
l-Limonene	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Causes moderate skin irritation.</li> <li>• May cause allergic skin reaction.</li> </ul>
Acetaldehyde	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The vapour is irritating to the respiratory tract. May cause lung injury. These effects may be delayed.</li> <li>• Causes severe eye irritation.</li> </ul>
Hydrogen peroxide (>35%)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• May be fatal if swallowed.</li> </ul>

*Note. Reprinted from "Toxic Materials - Hazards: OSH Answers", by Government of Canada, Canadian Centre for Occupational Health and Safety, (2017, October 06). Retrieved from [http://www.ccohs.ca/oshanswers/chemicals/Toxic/Toxic\\_hazards.hTml?wbdisable=true](http://www.ccohs.ca/oshanswers/chemicals/Toxic/Toxic_hazards.hTml?wbdisable=true)*

---

## NATURAL OCCURRING TOXINS

---



---

### 8.7.1 BIOTOXINS

---

The expression "biotoxin" is here and there used to unequivocally affirm the organic root. Biotoxins are additionally ordered into parasitic biotoxins, or short mycotoxins, microbial biotoxins, plant biotoxins, short phytotoxins and creature biotoxins.

Poisons delivered by microorganisms are vital virulenced determinants in charge of microbial pathogenicity or potentially avoidance of the host resistant reaction.

Biotoxins change extraordinarily in reason and system, and can be exceptionally intricate (the venom of the cone snail contains many little proteins, each focusing on a particular nerve channel or receptor), or moderately little protein.

Biotoxins in nature have two essential capacities:

- Predation in the bug, wind, scorpion, jellyfish, wasp
- Defense in the honey bee, subterranean insect, termite, bumble bee, wasp, harm dash frog

A portion of the all the more outstanding sorts of biotoxins include:

- Cyanotoxins, created by cyanobacteria
- Dinotoxins, created by Dinoflagellates
- Necrotoxins cause corruption (i.e., demise) in the cells they experience and decimate a wide range of tissue. Necrotoxins spread through the circulation system. In people, skin and muscletissues are most delicate to necrotoxins. Living beings that have necrotoxins include:
  - The dark colored loner or "fiddle back" creepy crawly
  - Most poisonous snakes and snakes deliver phospholipase and different trypsin-like serine proteases
  - Puff Adder
  - Necrotizing fasciitis (the "substance eating" microscopic organisms) - Produces a pore framing poison
- Neurotoxins principally influence the sensory systems of creatures. The gathering neurotoxins for the most part comprise of particle channel poisons that disturb particle channel conductance. Creatures that have neurotoxins include:
  - The black widow spider.
  - Most scorpions
  - The box jellyfish
  - Elapid snakes
  - The cone snail
  - The Blue-ringed octopus
  - Venomous angle
  - Frogs
  - Palythoa coral

- Myotoxins are little, essential peptides found in snake and lizard venoms. They cause muscle tissue harm by a non enzymatic receptor based component. Living beings that have myotoxins include:
  - rattlesnakes
  - eastern hairy mythical serpent
- Cytotoxins are dangerous at the level of individual cells, either in a non-particular mold or just in specific sorts of living cells:
  - Ricin, from castor beans
  - Apitoxin, from bumble bees
  - T-2 mycotoxin, from certain harmful mushrooms

---

## 8.7.2 INORGANIC CHEMICALS

---

### A. Heavy metals

#### (i) Lead:

The normally happening component lead was utilized as a part of the Roman period to line vessels and as a ceramics coat, and also in beauty care products. In the nineteenth century in the United States paint makers started to utilize lead as a color, albeit even in 1786, Benjamin Franklin sketched out the unsafe impacts of lead on the body in a letter to Benjamin Vaughan, a companion. Despite the fact that restricted in paint today, society should be ever watchful in ensuring youngsters (who are especially powerless to the impacts of lead on the mind and sensory system) from presentation to more established chipping paint chips. Lead was likewise utilized as a part of gas to anticipate motor thumping. In light of bans of these utilizations and escalated general wellbeing endeavors, lead focus in urban kids has diminished in the previous a very long while. Studies have shown a connection between's insignificant lead presentation and higher intellectual capacity.

#### (ii) Mercury:

Mercury, as different components in the occasional table at the highest point of this page, does not separate. It happens normally and is found in modest sums in seas, shakes and soil. It moves toward becoming airbourne when rocks separate through

disintegration, volcanoes eject and when soil deteriorates. It at that point flows in nature and is redistributed.

The United Nations Environment Program (UNEP) as of late expressed (in 2005) that mercury can be transported in the air and seas around the world a huge number of miles from where it is produced. An UNEP report additionally expresses that coal-let go control stations and waste incinerators directly represent 1,500 tons, or 70%, of new evaluated man-made mercury discharges to the climate. Limitations on contamination from control stations and incinerators could check such discharges. Be that as it may, don't hold your breath!

In 1989, it was evaluated that utilized family unit batteries made up roughly 86% of all dumped mercury, i.e. refined mercury or mercury subordinates that are utilized as a part of mechanical items and after that dumped, regularly in residential waste and not reused or discarded as an exceptional union. Dumped mercury frequently saturates the ground water, dirtying neighbourhood water supplies. The offer of mercury oxide batteries is currently prohibited in a few nations, and confined in different nations. For instance, the USA prohibited mercury oxide batteries with the exception of up to 25mg of mercury for every catch cell battery in the Mercury-Containing and Rechargeable Battery Management Act in 1996.

Different wellsprings of mercury tainting, either from the fabricate of, utilization of or dumping of (for the most part into landfill or modern profluent): research facility reagents and hardware, anodes (e.g. Calomel cathode), thermometers, indicators, dental applications (mercury amalgam fillings), paints, electrical apparatuses, fluctuating diuretics, fluorescent lights, beauty care products, hair colors, the make and conveyance of oil based commodities, and furthermore fungicides and pesticides. In spite of the fact that the utilization in fungicides and pesticides have diminished because of ecological concerns, mercury build-ups still endure in nature (i.e. air, water, soil and so forth.) from past utilize.

A lot of mercury progress toward becoming airbourne when oil, coal, wood and petroleum gas are singed, or when squander containing mercury is burned. Once airbourne, mercury tumbles to the ground with rain and snow, arriving on water or soil, in this manner causing pollution. Lakes and waterways are additionally

specifically contaminated by the release of mercury-loaded mechanical and metropolitan waste into them. Once in a waterway, the inorganic mercury (typically Mercuric Chloride) is changed over into natural mercury as methylmercury ( $\text{CH}_3\text{Hg}$ ) by microscopic organisms through chelation and different procedures (methylation - expansion of a methyl-gathering) - inside sea-going biota and furthermore dregs. Natural mercury is numerous hundred times more poisonous than inorganic mercury. Fish assimilate the methylmercury from their nourishment source and from the water as it disregards their gills. Mercury is bound firmly to proteins in all tissues in angle. For instance, underneath is an by Daphine Zuniga about her mercury harming from a high fish consume less calories.

As per Doctor's Data (Urine Toxic Metals Test Report), in light of different scholarly reference sources, the human admission of dietary mercury (particularly) is unimportant (except for angle), unless the sustenance is sullied with one of the above sources. An everyday eating regimen of fish can bring about 1-10 micrograms of mercury to be ingested every day, with around 3/4 of this as methyl mercury.

Inorganic mercury (mercuric salts or mercuric oxide) is changed over into natural mercury, either methyl mercury or ethyl mercury ( $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Hg}$ ) in the gastro intestinal tract by microbes where it can be all the more promptly consumed by the tissues including the cerebrum. On the off chance that amalgam fillings are releasing, the mercury they emanate is inorganic. This mercury tends to develop in the internal organ where it is changed over to natural mercury. More data on amalgam fillings can be found in the Mercury Amalgam Fillings area.

'One of the significant issues with substantial metals, particularly mercury, is the high level of reabsorption through the gut. While natural mercury is ineffectively assimilated through the gut, its natural methylated shape is exceedingly ingested (90-95% retention). The non-natural basic mercury discharged through the bile is frequently methylated by unusual microscopic organisms or yeast in the gut bringing about re-assimilation of methylated mercury. Natural mercury (from fish and fish) and basic mercury assimilated from different poisons can likewise be retained through the stomach related tract. The methylated mercury can pass the

blood-mind boundary, and apply its dangerous impacts in the cerebrum either as methylated mercury, or in the wake of being demethylated in the cerebrum, as essential mercury.'

Paul Cutler contends that both inorganic and natural mercury can be destructive, just in various ways. Natural mercury isn't hurtful to the kidneys yet effectively crosses the blood cerebrum boundary. Inorganic mercury is substantially more destructive however can't without much of a stretch cross the blood cerebrum barrier. The half existence of transformation of natural to inorganic mercury is around 44 days. It is assessed that roughly 5-10% of the aggregate sum of natural mercury expended winds up in the mind as inorganic mercury (i.e. changing over from natural to inorganic shape which does the real harm). Inorganic mercury is inadequately consumed by the stomach related tract, and the liver and gallbladder discharge mercury from the body in its inorganic frame.

It is felt that the noteworthy overwhelming metal levels exhibit in certain fish species implies that the individuals who bolster frequently on angle, i.e. chickens and their eggs (and a few people) might be higher in their mercury fixations.

Mercury is really 13 times heavier than water, yet isn't really 'wet'. Press objects glide over mercury.

### **(iii)Cadmium:**

Cadmium gets from delicate water, tobacco smoke, air contamination, fish, teas, bone supper, oxide cleans, paints and welding and so on. Cadmium alongside lead, mercury and arsenic is a delicate Lewis corrosive, with specific proclivity for delicate Lewis bases, for example, the sulphydryl side chain of cysteine amino acids. Therefore it is conceivable that the substantial metals apply their harmful impacts by holding with basic cysteine deposits in proteins; in spite of the fact that the real physiological outcomes differ starting with one metal then onto the next.

The substance properties of cadmium are considerably nearer to zinc than mercury. The principle hotspots for cadmium in the earth are from coal, zinc mining, refining of metals and tobacco smoking. The cadmium work in rural soils is of concern. These cadmium contributions to soils are chiefly from air borne affidavit from



business phosphate manures, which contain cadmium as a characteristic constituent of phosphate mineral. The cadmium focus would additionally increment with the utilization of compost from sewage ooze (which is regularly defiled with cadmium and different metals). Soil conditions were absolutely a factor in the main known instance of far reaching ecological cadmium harming, which occurred in the Jinzu valley of Japan. Water system water drawn from a stream that was polluted by zinc mining and refining complex prompted elevated amounts of cadmium in rice. Several individuals in the range created degenerative bone sickness called itai-itai because of impedance of cadmium with  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  testimony. Their bones wound up noticeably permeable and subject to fall. Incessant presentation to cadmium has been connected to heart and lung malady, insusceptible concealment, and liver and kidney illness. Cadmium assaults the dynamic destinations of protein hindering basic capacity. The protein repressed by  $\text{Cd}^{2+}$  incorporates adenosine triphosphate, liquor dehydrogenase, amylase, carbonic anhydrase, peptidase action in carboxy peptidase and glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase. As said the  $\text{Cd}^{2+}$  requesting protein metallothionein gives assurance until the point that its ability is surpassed. Since metallothionein is amassed in the kidney, this organ is harmed first by inordinate cadmium. Whatever remains of the cadmium is put away in the body and gathers with age. At the point when an over the top measure of  $\text{Cd}^{2+}$  is ingested, it replaces  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$  at key enzymatic destinations causing metabolic clutters.

### **B. Oxides of nitrogen and sulphur:**

Nitrous oxide ( $\text{N}_2\text{O}$ ) is utilized as an oxidant gas and in dental surgery as a general soporific. It is a focal sensory system depressant and can go about as asphyxiant. Nitric oxide ( $\text{NO}$ ) and nitrogen dioxide ( $\text{NO}_2$ ) are the two noteworthy oxides of nitrogen which influence human wellbeing.  $\text{NO}$ , as it is does not demonstrate any unfavorable wellbeing impacts. In any case, it winds up noticeably lethal when it is oxidized to  $\text{NO}_2$ .  $\text{NO}_2$ , after inward breath achieves the dampness filled alveoli of the lungs. There it is changed over into nitrous corrosive and nitric corrosive which are very disturbing and make harm the lung tissues. Biochemically  $\text{NO}_2$  disturbs lactic dehydrogenase and some other protein frameworks. Free radicals especially  $\text{HO}\cdot$  are likely framed in the body by the activity of  $\text{NO}_2$  and the compound presumably causes lipid peroxidation in which the  $\text{C}=\text{C}$  twofold

securities in unsaturated body lipids are assaulted by free radicals and experience chain response within the sight of  $O_2$  bringing about their oxidative pulverization.  $NO_2$  in blend with hydrocarbons goes about as the initiator of photochemical exhaust cloud prompting the generation of optional contaminations like the oxidants. These oxidants are the ones that reason harm to human wellbeing.

The principle worry of  $SO_2$  in urban environments emerge not from  $SO_2$ , but rather from the progressions it experiences in the climate, for example, the development of  $H_2SO_4$  and sulfate pressurized canned products. The sulfate particles can be conveyed profound into the lungs, causing significantly more extreme medical issues.  $SO_2$  can likewise be assimilated on little particulates, for example, the salts of iron, manganese and vanadium exhibit in the environment and accordingly enter the alveoli. There within the sight of wet air,  $SO_2$  is oxidized to  $H_2SO_4$  and the particulates go about as impetuses in improving the oxidation procedure.

### C. Asbestos:

"Asbestos" is a mechanical term for various hydrated silicates with an inexact equation  $Mg_3 P(Si_2O_5) (OH)_4$ . They isolate into solid adaptable strands after pulverizing and preparing. Inward breath of asbestos tidy or strands can cause a crippling lung sickness known as asbestosis. The infection is portrayed by shortness of expansiveness and pleural calcification. Asbestos has additionally been demonstrated to actuate lung disease. The strands line the layers of the lungs and guts and this can prompt mesothelioma, a hopeless and lethal malignancy.

---

## 8.8 DOSE-RESPONSE RELATIONSHIP

---

The measurements impact relationship is the connection amongst dosage and impact on the individual level. An expansion in measurements may build the power of an impact, or a more serious impact may come about. A measurement impact bend might be acquired at the level of the entire living being, the cell or the objective particle. Some harmful impacts, for example, passing or growth, are not reviewed but rather are "all or none" impacts.

The dosage reaction relationship is the connection amongst measurements and the level of people demonstrating a particular impact. With expanding dosage a more prominent number of people in the uncovered populace will for the most part be influenced.

It is basic to toxicology to set up dosage impact and measurement reaction connections. In therapeutic (epidemiological) thinks about a rule regularly utilized for tolerating a causal connection between an operator and an infection is that impact or reaction is relative to dosage.

A few dosage reaction bends can be drawn for a synthetic—one for each sort of impact. The measurement reaction bend for most dangerous impacts (when contemplated in vast populaces) has a sigmoid shape. There is generally a low-dosage go where there is no reaction identified; as measurement builds, the reaction takes after a climbing bend that will for the most part achieve a level at a 100% reaction. The dosage reaction bend mirrors the varieties among people in a populace. The incline of the bend changes from concoction to synthetic and between various sorts of impacts. For a few chemicals with particular impacts (cancer-causing agents, initiators, mutagens) the measurement reaction bend may be straight from dosage zero inside a specific measurements go. This implies no edge exists and that even little measurements speak to a hazard. Over that measurements go, the hazard may increment at more prominent than a straight rate.

Variety in presentation amid the day and the aggregate length of introduction amid one's lifetime might be as vital for the result (reaction) as mean or normal or even coordinated measurements level. High pinnacle exposures might be more destructive than an all the more even presentation level. This is the situation for some natural solvents. Then again, for a few cancer-causing agents, it has been tentatively demonstrated that the fractionation of a solitary dosage into a few exposures with a similar aggregate measurement might be more powerful in delivering tumors.

A dosage is frequently communicated as the measure of a xenobiotic entering a living being (in units, for example, mg/kg body weight). The measurements might be communicated in various (pretty much educational) ways: introduction dosage,

which is the air centralization of toxin breathed in amid a specific day and age (in work cleanliness normally eight hours), or the held or consumed measurements (in modern cleanliness additionally called the body load), which is the sum show in the body at a specific time amid or after presentation. The tissue measurements is the measure of substance in a particular tissue and the objective dosage is the measure of substance (for the most part a metabolite) bound to the basic particle. The objective dosage can be communicated as mg substance bound per mg of a particular macromolecule in the tissue. To apply this idea, data on the instrument of harmful activity on the sub-atomic level is required. The objective measurements is all the more precisely connected with the lethal impact. The introduction measurements or body weight might be all the more effortlessly accessible, however these are less accurately identified with the impact.

In the measurement idea a period viewpoint is frequently included, regardless of the possibility that it isn't generally communicated. The hypothetical dosage as indicated by Haber's law is  $D = ct$ , where  $D$  is measurements,  $c$  is grouping of the xenobiotic noticeable all around and  $t$  the span of introduction to the synthetic. In the event that this idea is utilized at the objective organ or sub-atomic level, the sum per mg tissue or particle over a specific time might be utilized. The time perspective is generally more imperative for understanding rehashed exposures and ceaseless impacts than for single exposures and intense impacts.

Added substance impacts happen because of presentation to a mix of chemicals, where the individual toxicities are just added to each other ( $1+1=2$ ). At the point when chemicals act through a similar system, additivity of their belongings is accepted despite the fact that not generally the situation in actuality. Connection between chemicals may bring about a restraint (enmity), with a littler impact than that normal from expansion of the impacts of the individual chemicals ( $1+1<2$ ). Then again, a mix of chemicals may create a more articulated impact than would be normal by expansion (expanded reaction among people or an expansion in recurrence of reaction in a populace), this is called synergism ( $1+1>2$ ).

Inactivity time is the time between first introduction and the presence of a recognizable impact or reaction. The term is frequently utilized for cancer-causing

impacts, where tumors may show up quite a while after the begin of presentation and at times long after the end of introduction.

A dosage edge is a measurement level beneath which no discernible impact happens. Edges are thought to exist for specific impacts, similar to intense poisonous impacts; yet for nobody else, as cancer-causing impacts (by DNA-adduct-framing initiators). The unimportant nonappearance of a reaction in a given populace ought not, be that as it may, be taken as proof for the presence of a limit. Nonattendance of reaction could be because of basic factual marvels: an unfriendly impact happening at low recurrence may not be discernible in a little populace.

LD50 (viable measurements) is the dosage causing half lethality in a creature populace. The LD50 is regularly given in more established writing as a measure of intense poisonous quality of chemicals. The higher the LD50, the lower is the intense lethality. An exceptionally dangerous synthetic (with a low LD50) is said to be strong. There is no fundamental relationship amongst's intense and incessant poisonous quality. ED50 (successful measurements) is the dosage causing a particular impact other than lethality in half of the creatures.

NOEL (NOAEL) implies the no watched (unfavorable) impact level, or the most astounding measurements that does not cause a poisonous impact. To build up a NOEL requires numerous measurements, an extensive populace and extra data to ensure that nonattendance of a reaction isn't simply a factual marvel. LOEL is the most reduced watched powerful measurements on a dosage reaction bend, or the least measurement that causes an impact.

A wellbeing factor is a formal, discretionary number with which one partitions the NOEL or LOEL got from creature examinations to get a provisional admissible measurements for people. This is frequently utilized as a part of the zone of nourishment toxicology, however might be utilized likewise in word related toxicology. A security factor may likewise be utilized for extrapolation of information from little populaces to bigger populaces. Wellbeing factors go from 100 to 103. A wellbeing element of two may ordinarily be adequate to shield from a less genuine impact, (for example, disturbance) and a factor as vast as 1,000 might be utilized for intense impacts, (for example, growth). The term wellbeing element

could be better supplanted by the term insurance factor or, even, vulnerability factor. The utilization of the last term reflects logical vulnerabilities, for example, regardless of whether correct measurement reaction information can be made an interpretation of from creatures to people for the specific compound, poisonous impact or presentation circumstance.

Extrapolations are hypothetical subjective or quantitative evaluations of poisonous quality (hazard extrapolations) got from interpretation of information starting with one animal types then onto the next or from one arrangement of dosage reaction information (ordinarily in the high measurements run) to locales of dosage reaction where no information exist. Extrapolations generally should be made to anticipate harmful reactions outside the perception go. Numerical displaying is utilized for extrapolations in view of a comprehension of the conduct of the synthetic in the creature (toxicokinetic demonstrating) or in light of the comprehension of likelihood that particular organic occasions will happen (organically or unthinkingly based models). Some national offices have created advanced extrapolation models as a formalized strategy to foresee dangers for administrative purposes.

---

## **8.9 ROUT OF ENTERY**

---

Dangerous materials are substances that may make hurt an individual on the off chance that it enters the body. Dangerous materials may enter the body in various ways. These ways are known as the course of presentation. The most widely recognized course of presentation is through inward breath (breathing it into the lungs). Another basic course of section is through skin contact. A few materials can without much of a stretch go through unprotected skin and enter the body. Ingestion is another, less normal, course of presentation in the work environment. Ingestion frequently happens incidentally through poor cleanliness hones (e.g. eating sustenance or smoking a cigarette utilizing debased hands).

---

## **8.10 ENVIRONMENTAL MOVEMENT**

---

The physical (non-natural) development of discharged chemicals will decide spatial and fleeting appropriation in the earth:

- medium is generally air or water
  - toxins frame in travel might be vaporous, disintegrated or particulate
  - two significant types of physical transport are shift in weather conditions and dissemination
- A. Advection** – development of the vehicle medium, concoction toxicant basically "comes for the ride" with the mass development of the medium
- two sorts, homogeneous shift in weather conditions and heterogeneous shift in weather conditions
- (i) Homogeneous shift in weather conditions - development in a solitary transport medium
- examples – transport of concoction in air on a blustery day or transport of a synthetic disintegrated in water in a streaming stream
  - advective streams frequently overwhelm compound transport in the environment and amphibian and marine frameworks
  - advective air and water streams additionally happen in soil frameworks, yet the rate of development is extensively slower than in the environment or waterways
- (ii) Heterogeneous shift in weather conditions – (at least two) transport media are associated with synthetic development
- examples - substance transported in air experiences barometrical synthetic statement into water or soil and is additionally transported in the second medium or concoction
  - transport in water experiences sorption to suspended particles and settles to base to be additionally transported by residue development
  - dynamics of heterogeneous transport are more mind boggling than flow of homogeneous transport
- B. Diffusion** – development of the substance toxicant itself, development is from an area of moderately high fixation to a position of lower focus
- may happen inside a medium (or stage) or between media (or stages)
- (i) Diffusion inside a stage or medium

- may happen by arbitrary (warm) movement of the compound (sub-atomic dissemination), by irregular turbulent blending of the vehicle medium (turbulent dispersion), or by a mix of both

(ii) Diffusion between stages or media

- occurs at interface between two media, air-water, molecule water, or organic film water
- diffusive transport will drive a substance between media until the point when the balance fixations are come to in each stage

---

## 8.11 FATE OF TOXINS

---

Poisons can cause genuine wellbeing impacts in an uncovered person. The level of destiny, related with any poison is identified with the correct, centralization of the poison, the course into the body and the sum consumed by the body (three measurements). The weakness of individual likewise assumes a critical part. Remember that poison specialists can have other destiny related with it. For instance, a poison operator may likewise be destructive and combustible.

---

## 8.12 MODE OF ACTIONS

---

Poisons can influence the wellbeing through two unique modes one could be quickly impact or deferred. Wellbeing impacts that happen promptly after a solitary presentation are called intense impacts. In different cases, wellbeing impacts won't happen until some point after the presentation. This is known as an incessant impact. An incessant impact may happen hours, days, months or even a long time after presentation. By and large, intense impacts are caused by a solitary, generally high introduction. Ceaseless impacts have a tendency to happen over a more drawn out timeframe and include bring down exposures (e.g., introduction to a littler sum after some time). Some dangerous materials can have both intense and ceaseless wellbeing impacts.

---

## 8.13 NATURAL POISONS

---



Numerous harmful chemicals are available normally in the earth. For instance, all of metals and different components are far reaching in the earth, however under a few conditions they may happen normally in focuses that are sufficiently huge to be toxic to in any event a few life forms.

Example of common "contamination" can include surface presentation of minerals containing substantial groupings of lethal components, for example, copper, lead, selenium, or arsenic. For instance, soils impacted by a mineral known as serpentine can have huge groupings of dangerous nickel and cobalt, and can be harmful to generally plants. In different cases, certain plants may specifically take up components from their condition, to the extent that their foliage turns out to be intensely poisonous to herbivorous creatures. For instance, soils in semi-parched areas of the western United States regularly contain selenium. This component can be bio accumulated by specific types of **legumes** known as locoweeds (*Astragalus* spp.), to the extent that the plants turn out to be greatly noxious to cows and to other expansive creatures that may eat their dangerous foliage.

In a few conditions, the nearby condition can turn out to be normally contaminated by gasses at harmful fixations, harming plants and creatures. This can occur in the region of volcanoes, where vents known as fumaroles regularly radiate lethal sulfur dioxide, which can toxin and murder adjacent plants. The sulfur dioxide can likewise dry-store to the close-by ground and surface water, causing a serious fermentation, which brings about solvent aluminium particles getting to be noticeably poisonous.

Other normally happening poisons are biochemical's that are combined by plants and creatures, frequently as an impediment to herbivores and predators, individually. Truth be told, probably the most dangerous chemicals known to science are biochemical's orchestrated by creatures. One such case is tetrodotoxin, blended by the Japanese globe fish (*Spheroideus rubripes*), and to a great degree dangerous regardless of the possibility that ingested in modest sums. Just somewhat less harmful is saxitoxin, blended by types of marine phytoplankton, however collected by shellfish. At the point when individuals eat these shellfish, a dangerous disorder known as disabled shellfish harming comes about. There are various

different cases of fatal biochemical, for example, snake and honey bee venoms, poisons created by pathogenic microorganisms, and mushroom harms.

---

### 8.13.1 SELENIUM IN GRAIN

---

Selenium (Se) enters the natural way of life by means of plant and microorganism change of inorganic selenium to naturally bound structures. Selenium poisonous quality (i.e., selenosis), caused by inordinate selenium admission, has happened on a huge scale in seleniferous districts in China as the after-effect of expanded utilization of selenium-containing sustenances (inexact day by day admission of 3–6.5 mg Se/day). The most well-known indications of selenosis are loss of hair, distortion, and loss of nails. Other detailed side effects incorporate expanded blood selenium levels, the runs, exhaustion, a garlic-like scent of the breath and real emissions, touchiness, fringe neuropathy, and skin injuries. Selenium consumption levels that reason selenosis have not yet been all around characterized. Concentrates in China recommend that around 3–5 mg/day (0.05–0.08 mg/kg/day) will cause selenosis. Inhabitants of seleniferous areas in South Dakota who devoured roughly 700 µg selenium/day (0.01 mg/kg/day) demonstrated no indications of selenosis. The EPA has proposed an oral reference measurement (RfD) of 0.005 mg/kg bw/day, or 350 µg/day.

---

### 8.13.2 METHYL MERCURY IN SEAFOOD

---

Introduction to natural mercury is generally uncommon, in spite of the fact that was before a word related infection of cap makers as essential mercury was utilized for the curing of creature pelts. Inward breath of the mercury exhaust prompted mental weakening and in this manner named —mad hatter syndromell. Important to nourishment toxicology, is the methyl subordinate, methyl mercury, framed by bacterial activity in a sea-going condition from anthropogenic and normal wellsprings of basic mercury. Anthropogenic sources incorporate consuming of coal (which contains mercury), chloralkali process and different wellsprings of natural mercury into sea-going situations. On account of Minamata, Japan, there was an immediate release of methyl mercury into the earth. Methyl mercury presentation may cause neurological paresthesias, ataxia, and dysarthria, hearing deformities and passing. Formative postponements have been archived in youngsters borne of moms presented to methyl mercury. Other than guide presentation to methyl mercury, introduction typically occurs as the aftereffect of methyl mercury getting to be plainly fused into the evolved way of life, climbing as every predator expends the littler and less blessed creature. Close to the pinnacle of the natural way of life, methyl mercury winds up plainly amassed in angle including, bonito (*Sarda* spp.), halibut (*Hippoglossus* spp.), mackerel (*Scomberomorus* spp.), marlin (*Makaira* spp.), shark (all species), swordfish (*Xiphias gladius*), and bluefin fish (*Thunnus* spp.). The determination of these species depended on chronicled information on levels of methyl mercury found in angle expended in the U.S. The choice was additionally in view of a FDA activity level of 1.0 ppm in the palatable bit of fish. In any case, the reasonable level of mercury relies upon whether the mercury was —addedll; that is, did the nearness of mercury emerge from an anthropogenic source (i.e., was the fish got in a region known for mercury release), or was not included and the after effect of mercury normally show in nature.

---

### 8.13.3 PRUSSIC ACID IN CHERRY, APPLE AND PEACH PITS

---

Prussic corrosive (otherwise called hydrocyanic corrosive, hydrogen cyanide, or cyanide) is shaped when cyanogenic glycosides found in leaves, cherry, apple and peach pits, oak greenery and other plant tissues are harmed and come into contact with beta-glycosidase or emulsion proteins. The proteins discharge the cyanide from the glycoside, and the cyanide keeps the body's cells from using oxygen, bringing about cell putrefaction and tissue harm. The mucous layers and blood are brilliant red as they are oxygenated; however the cells in the tissues can't use the oxygen. Clinical indications of prussic corrosive harming incorporate quick breathing, trembling, incoordination and in outrageous cases, respiratory as well as heart failure. Many natural product trees contain prussic corrosive glycosides in the leaves and seeds, yet just immaterial levels are available in the beefy parts of the organic product. In the west African tropics, cassava is expended as a dietary staple and wrong treatment of the cassava before handling and utilization can bring about a constant type of cyanide harming named "tropical ataxic neuropathy", the after effect of demyelination of the optic, sound-related, and fringe nerve tracts.

Prussic corrosive as found in enhancing fixings is restricted to 25 ppm in cherry pits (*Prunus avium* L. or, on the other hand *P. cerasus* L.), cherry shrub leaves (*Prunus laurocerasus* L.), senior tree leaves (*Sambucus nigra* L.), and peach leaves (*Prunus persica* (L.) Batsch) (21 CFR 172.510); despite the fact that the concentrate of intense almond (*Prunus amygdalus* Batsch, *Prunus armeniaca* L., or *Prunus persica* (L.) Batsch) must be prussic corrosive free (21 CFR 182.20). There are no FDA controls or rules limiting the nearness of prussic corrosive in apple seed (*Malus* spp.), likely on the grounds that concentrates of these seeds have no financial incentive as flavor fixings.

---

### 8.13.4 HYPERICIN IN ST. JOHN'S WORT

---

St. John's wort (*Hypericum perforatum*; Figure 1) is a natural idea to lighten indications of despondency, and institutionalized concentrates of St. John's wort are devoured commonly in tablet or container shape. The real dynamic upper constituents in St. John's wort are believed to be hyperforin and hypericin. The component of activity isn't completely seen, yet may include restraint of serotonin (5-HT) reuptake, like regular upper medications. In this way, hyperforin and hypericin brought in conjunction with other serotonin reuptake inhibitors may add to serotonin disorder, a conceivably hazardous rise of serotonin in the focal sensory system. Hyperforin is additionally known to instigate cytochrome P450 proteins CYP3A4 and CYP2C9, which can prompt expanded digestion of specific medications and diminished clinical reaction.



Figure: 9.1 St. John's wort (*Hypericum perforatum*).

In substantial measurements, St. John's wort is toxic to brushing creatures, with distributed instances of domesticated animals harming described by general fretfulness and skin bothering, hind limb shortcoming, gasping, perplexity, misery and in a few occurrences, insanity and hyperactivity bringing about the creature running in hovers until depleted. In people, utilization of St. John's wort may bring about photosensitization, and at high ceaseless measurements, some liver harm may happen. As far as possible presentation to St. Johns wort (*Hypericum perforatum*), including the leaves, blooms, and caulis, by ordering that lone without hypericin liquor distillate shape might be utilized and afterward, just in mixed refreshments (21 CFR 172.510).

---

### 8.13.5 GOITROGENS (GLUCOSINOLATES) IN BRASSICASPP

---

Certain crude sustenances have been found to contain substances that stifle the capacity of the thyroid organ by meddling with the take-up of iodine, a fundamental supplement in development, intellectual capacity, and hormonal adjust. An absence of useful iodine is known to bring about psychological insufficiencies (e.g., Cretinism). The decline in iodine take-up makes the thyroid organ broaden, shaping a goiter. Sustenances that have been distinguished as goitrogenic incorporate spinach, cassava, peanuts, soybeans, strawberries, sweet potatoes, peaches, pears, and vegetables in the Brassica sort, which incorporate broccoli, brussels grows, cabbage, canola, cauliflower, mustard greens, radishes, and rapeseed. Goiter has additionally been ascribed to the utilization of vast amounts of uncooked kale or cabbage.

High temperatures (i.e., cooking) inactivate the goitrogenic substances, on the whole named glucosinolates. Cassava (*Manihot esculenta*) is a basic dietary wellspring of vitality in the tropics, however contains abnormal amounts of linamarin, a glucosinolate. Cassava must be appropriately prepared dried, absorbed water or heated to adequately decrease the linamarin . Glucosinolates are sulfur-containing substances that are utilized in the body by thioglucosidase to shape thiocyanate, isothiocyanate, nitriles and sulfur. Under specific conditions the isothiocyanates experience cyclization to frame goitrins, expanding their powerful goitrogenic action. The oils from rapeseed (*Brassica napus*) must be investigated for potential goitrins to evade potential goitrogenic action while expending these oils. No FDA directions were situated for reasonable convergences of glucosinolates in human nourishment. Glucosinolates (figured as epi-progoitrin) and goitrin are restricted to not over 4% and 0.1% (individually) of the seed supper of *Crambe abyssinica* (*Crambe feast*) acquired after the evacuation of the oil and utilized as a creature sustain fixing (21 CFR 573.310).

---

### 8.13.6 ERUCIC ACID IN RAPE

---

Assault (*Brassica napus* L. or, on the other hand *Brassica campestris* L.) is a yearly herb of the mustard family local to Europe and is developed in the United States

since it produces oil-rich seeds for cooking oil. Rapeseed oil had been utilized for a long time as oil for lights and all the more as of late as machine oil grease. Far reaching utilization of rapeseed oil as a sustenance fixing was not considered until the late 50s. Be that as it may, early examinations found that sustaining abnormal amounts of rapeseed oil to rats fundamentally expanded cholesterol levels in the adrenal organs and lipidosis in the cardiovascular tissue. This impact was additionally noted in chickens, ducks and turkeys nourished abnormal amounts of rapeseed oil, bringing about development impediment, mortality, and a thickening of the epicardium and expanded stringy tissue in various regions of the myocardium. Erucic corrosive was distinguished as the causative specialist of these impacts of rapeseed oil. Erucic corrosive is a long-chain unsaturated fat with one unsaturated carbon-carbon security (C22:1). Abnormal amounts of erucic corrosive have been gotten a kick out of the chance to greasy store arrangement in heart muscle in creatures. Erucic corrosive is ineffectively oxidized by the mitochondrial  $\beta$ -oxidation framework, particularly by the myocardial cells, which brings about a gathering of erucic corrosive, creating myocardial lipidosis which has been accounted for to lessen the contractile power of the heart. Albeit myocardial lipidosis due to erucic corrosive utilization has not been affirmed in people, creature bolstering contemplates affirmed the development of myocardial lipidosis in an assortment of creature animal types in a measurements subordinate way, which has been the standard appraisal by government organizations of potential unfavorable impacts in people. Canola oil is acquired from Canola (Canadian oil, low corrosive), a rapeseed assortment that was ordinarily reared in the late 1970s in Canada to contain decreased levels of erucic corrosive and glucosinolates. As far as possible the measure of erucic corrosive in Canola oil to close to 2% of the part unsaturated fats (21 CFR 184.1555).

---

## 8.14 SUMMARY

---

Wellbeing experts require access to ecological wellbeing and toxicology data for some reasons. Absolutely, open mindfulness about human wellbeing dangers from synthetic and biologic specialists in the earth has expanded significantly as of late. Correspondingly, changing patterns in medicinal services and an accentuation on

counteractive action, combined with expanding PC education, all help the requirement for promptly accessible data about the effects of unsafe substances in nature on individual and general wellbeing. Reports in the famous press and news media have featured people in general's worry. For instance, pesticides on sustenances; second-hand tobacco smoke; asbestos and lead paint in homes and open structures; dioxin sulling; word related exposures to gas and different chemicals; presentation to radon and benzene; and drinking water debased with biologic or concoction operators are only a couple of the issues that may defy the American open.

Despite the fact that the general population depends intensely on government and state administrative offices for insurance from exposures to unsafe substances, they oftentimes seek wellbeing experts for data on courses of introduction and the nature and degree of related antagonistic wellbeing results. Be that as it may, most wellbeing experts secure just a negligible learning of toxicology amid their instruction and preparing. Therefore, their working learning of the unfavorable impacts of chemicals on wellbeing and the conditions under which those impacts may happen is frequently restricted. Besides, with the many contending requests on wellbeing experts' chance, it is troublesome, notwithstanding for pros, to keep advised of quickly advancing toxicology data. Hence, wellbeing experts require prepared access to toxicology and ecological wellbeing data assets to help them with persistent care. Policymakers, wellbeing consultants, analysts, wellbeing instructors, and the overall population likewise require access to this data as they seek after their own particular request.

The Toxic Substances Control Act of 1976 furnishes EPA with specialist to require detailing, record-keeping and testing necessities, and confinements identifying with synthetic substances as well as blends. Certain substances are for the most part prohibited from TSCA, including, among others, sustenance, medications, beautifying agents and pesticides.



---

## 8.15 GLOSSARY

---

**Abortifacient:** Substance that causes pregnancy to end prematurely and causes an abortion.

**Absolute lethal concentration (LC100):** Lowest concentration of a substance in an environmental medium which kills 100 % of test organisms or species under defined conditions.

**Note:** This value is dependent on the number of organisms used in its assessment.

**Absorbed dose (of a substance):** internal dose Amount (of a substance) taken up by an organism or into organs or tissues of interest.

**Absorbed dose (of ionizing radiation), D:** Energy imparted by ionizing radiation to a specified volume of matter divided by the mass of that volume.

**Acaricide:** Substance intended to kill mites, ticks, or other Acaridae.

**Chain of custody** - ensuring evidence is secure and traceable at all times.

**Chromatographic techniques** - analytical procedure used for separation of compounds or drugs.

**Derivitization** - process of modifying original compound/drug for enhanced analytical detection.

**Drug or toxin concentration** - the amount of drug, metabolite or other toxin in a given volume of plasma, urine, other fluid, tissue homogenate, etc.(e.g., number of micrograms, nanograms or picograms per millilitre).

**Forensic practitioner** - A person, usually police officer, scientist or physician who is engaged in forensic investigations.

**Hazard** - the biological effects produced by substances (i.e., toxicity). Hazards pose risks only if the exposure is sufficiently high.

**Histological** - pertaining to the minute structure of animal and plant tissues as discernible with the microscope.

**Homogenization** - process of preparing tissue for analysis by grinding a known amount of tissue in a known amount of water.

**Immunoassays** – a biochemical test that measures the presence or concentration of a substance in solutions that frequently contain a complex mixture of substances.

**Medico-legal death investigation (MDLI)** - A medical investigation performed by especially trained forensic medical practitioners, often in conjunction with forensic scientists, to determine the cause and manner of death.

**Metabolism** - the sum of the processes by which a particular substance is handled in the living body.

**Metabolite** - a product of metabolism.

**Poison** - a substance that through its chemical action usually kills, injures, or impairs an organism.

**Post-mortem redistribution** - recognized toxicological phenomenon of an increase in drug concentration after death.

**Specimens** - Biological samples collected from a living or deceased person that can be analysed for one or more substances relevant to the matter.

**Toxic** - containing or being poisonous material especially when capable of causing death or serious debilitation.

**Toxicant** - a toxic agent.

**Toxicity** - the biological effect of a substance. In this context, toxicity and hazard are used interchangeably.

**Toxicology** - a science that deals with poisons and their effect and with the problems involved (as clinical, industrial, or legal).

---

## 8.16 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS AND POSSIBLE ANSWERS

---

### Multiple choice Questions:

1. Phosphine liberated in the stomach in aluminum phosphide poisoning is toxic to all except (Ans-B)
  - a. Lungs
  - b. luminium
  - c. Liver
  - d. Heart
2. Paraquat poisoning causes (Ans-D)
  - a. Renal failure
  - b. Cardiac failure
  - c. Respiratory failure
  - d. Multiple organ failure
3. Ecstasy toxicity causes (Ans-E)
  - a. Hypereflexia
  - b. Trismus
  - c. Dilated pupils
  - d. Visual hallucinations
  - e. All of the above
4. The most useful bedside test to suggest snake bite envenomation is (Ans-B)
  - a. Prothrombin time
  - b. 20 min whole blood clotting time
  - c. International normalized ratio
  - d. Platelet count
5. All substances can be toxic depending on the dosage
  - a. True
  - b. False
  - c. Wrong
  - d. Not it

**Fill in the blanks**

1. Yu-cheng Disease in Taiwan is due to the toxic effect of \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. lead
  - b. PCBs**
  - c. dioxin
  - d. asbestos
  - e. mercury
2. \_\_\_\_\_ is the most likely process of absorption for amino acids.
  - a. diffusion
  - b. facilitated diffusion**
  - c. active transport
  - d. endocytosis
3. The largest percent of antibodies belong to the \_\_\_\_\_ class.
  - a. IgG**
  - b. IgE
  - xc c. IgM
  - d. IgA
4. Absorption of the poison is more by \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. inhalation
  - b. ingestion
  - c. Skin contact
  - d. Absorption is similar in all routes

5. The source of poison that give least frequent number of cases but most serious is\_\_\_\_\_

- a. Animal source.
- b. Plant source.
- c. Chemical source.
- d. All of the above give almost the same frequency of cases.

**Short Questions:**

1. What are the possible toxic mechanisms for chemicals?
2. List the variety of processes of absorption including their characteristics.
3. How do toxic substances enter the body?
4. What are the major functions of the skin? The skin can help to :
5. What are the three major mechanisms for the harmful effects of environmental toxins?
6. List the four major types of hypersensitivity reactions:

**Long Questions:**

1. Describe different kind of toxicants and their sources?
2. Give brief details about dose-response relationship of toxins?
3. What are the routes of entry of toxic substances into human body?
4. Define the environmental movement and fate of toxins?
5. What are the chronic modes of action?
6. List out the natural poisons?

---

## 8.17 REFERENCES

---

1. Carrington C., Bolger M. An Exposure Assessment for Methylmercury from Seafood for Consumers in the United States. [(Accessed on 21 July 2010)]. Available online: <http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Food/FoodSafety/Product-SpecificInformation/Seafood/FoodbornePathogensContaminants/Methylmercury/UCM114740.pdf>. [PubMed].
2. European Commission. Scientific Committee on Food Opinion of the scientific committee on food on thujone. Feb 6, 2003. [(Accessed on 21 July 2010)]. Available online: [http://ec.europa.eu/food/fs/sc/scf/out162\\_en.pdf](http://ec.europa.eu/food/fs/sc/scf/out162_en.pdf).

3. Hutt P.B., Merrill R.A., Grossman L.W. Food and Drug Law. 3rd. Foundation Press; New York, NY, USA: 2007. p. 369.
4. Matsumura, Y. and Ananthaswamy, H.N. (2004): "Toxic effects of ultraviolet radiation on the skin". *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology*. 195: 298-308.
5. Reilly C. Selenium: Physiology, dietary sources and requirements. In: Sadler M.J., editor. *Encyclopaedia of Human Nutrition*. Academic; San Diego, CA, USA: 1998. pp. 1752–1758.
6. Sors T.G., Ellis D.R., Salt D.E. Selenium uptake, translocation, assimilation and metabolic fate in plants. *Photosynth. Res.* 2005; 86:373–389. [PubMed].
7. United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Selenium and compounds (CASRN 7782-49-2) Mar 1, 1991. [(Accessed on 21 July 2010)]. Available online: <http://www.epa.gov/iris/subst/0472.htm>.
8. United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) Chapter 10: Methyl Mercury. Fish and Fisheries Products Hazards and Controls Guidance. 3rd. Jun, 2001. [(Accessed on 21 July 2010)]. Available online: <http://www.fda.gov/Food/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/GuidanceDocuments/Seafood/ucm092041.htm>.
9. Waldron H.A. Did the Mad Hatter have mercury poisoning? *Br. Med. J.* 1983; 287:1961. Doi: 10.1136/bmj.287.6409.1961.[PMC free article] [PubMed] [Cross Ref].
10. Yang G., Wang S., Zhou R., Sun S. Endemic selenium intoxication of humans in China. *Am. J. Clin. Nutr.* 1983; 37:872–881. [PubMed]

---

## UNIT: 9 ANALYTICAL TOXICOLOGY

---

### CONTENTS

9.1 Objectives

9.2 Introduction

9.3 Developing an analytical toxicology service

9.4 Analytical techniques suitable for low-resource settings

9.5 Toxic Responses of Blood

9.6 Organ Function Tests

9.6.1 Invasive tests

9.6.2 Non- invasive tests

9.6.3 Renal Function test

9.6.4 Hepatic Function test

9.6.5 Thyroid function test

9.6.6 Pancreatic function test

9.6.7 Cardiovascular function test

9.7 Reproductive test

10.7.1 Hysterosalpingogram

10.7.2 Laparoscopy

10.7.3 Hysteroscopy

10.7.4 Saline hysteroogram

10.7.5 Endometrial biopsy

10.7.6 Cervical mucus test and postcoital test

9.8 Carcinogenic test

10.8.1 The animal test(s)

10.8.2 Regulatory requirements and test guidelines

10.8.3 Non-animal alternative methods

10.8.4 Validation and acceptance of non-animal alternative method

9.9 Summary

9.10 Glossary

9.11 Self Assessment Questions and Possible Answers

9.12 References

---

## 9.1 OBJECTIVES

---

The study of this unit will let students to:

- Define Analytical toxicology
- Describes the toxic responses of blood
- Explain Organ function tests

---

## 9.2 INTRODUCTION

---

Investigative toxicology is the location, distinguishing proof, and estimation of remote mixes (xenobiotics) in natural and different examples. Investigative techniques are accessible for an extensive variety of intensifies: these might be chemicals, pesticides, pharmaceuticals, medications of mishandle and normal poisons.

Scientific toxicology can aid the analysis, administration, forecast, and anticipation of harming. What's more explanatory toxicology research facilities might be engaged with a scope of different exercises, for example, the evaluation of presentation following concoction episodes, restorative medication checking, legal investigations, and observing for medications of mishandle. They may likewise be associated with examine, for instance in deciding the pharmacokinetic and toxicokinetic properties of substances or the viability of new treatment regimens.

---

## 9.3 DEVELOPING AN ANALYTICAL TOXICOLOGY SERVICE

---

When arranging the advancement of a scientific toxicology benefit there is various contemplations. These incorporate the example of harming and, accordingly, the particular substances for which investigations will be required, the current framework, the accessibility of progressing specialized help, save parts and reagents from providers, the accessibility of a unit of prepared staff and the ability to prepare new staff and give proceeding with proficient advancement.

---

## 9.4 ANALYTICAL TECHNIQUES SUITABLE FOR LOW-RESOURCE SETTINGS

---

IPCS has built up manual depicting straightforward scientific procedures for the distinguishing proof of more than 100 substances usually engaged with intense harming episodes. These methods don't require refined hardware or costly reagents, or even a consistent supply of power, and can be completed in the essential labs that are accessible to most clinics and wellbeing offices.

---

## 9.5 TOXIC RESPONSES OF BLOOD

---

Hematotoxicology is the investigation of antagonistic impacts of medications, non-remedial chemicals and different specialists in our condition on blood and blood-shaping tissues. Hematotoxicity might be viewed as essential, where at least one blood segments are straightforwardly influenced and optional, where the lethal impact is an outcome of other tissue damage or foundational aggravations. Essential harmfulness is viewed as among the more typical genuine impacts of xenobiotics, especially sedates. Auxiliary poisonous quality is exceedingly normal, because of the affinity of platelets to mirror an extensive variety of nearby and fundamental impacts of toxicants on different tissues. The reason for blood is to transport oxygen from the lungs around the body and carbon dioxide from the cells to the lungs for exhalation, to expel squanders, for example, lactic corrosive from muscle cells, to convey supplements, for example, amino acids and glucose to cells around the body, to keep up homeostasis and to clump wounds and battle disease. The indispensable capacities that platelets perform, together with the weakness of this exceedingly proliferative tissue to inebriation, makes the hematopoietic framework interesting as an objective organ. The crucial capacities that platelets perform, together with the defenselessness of this exceptionally proliferative tissue to inebriation, make the hematopoietic framework extraordinary as an objective organ. It positions with liver and kidney as among the most vital contemplations in the hazard appraisal of individual patient populaces presented to potential toxicants in nature, work environment and prescription bureau. The conveyance of oxygen to tissues all through the body, support of vascular honesty, and arrangement of the numerous



affector and effector insusceptible capacities fundamental for have safeguard require a monstrous proliferative and regenerative limit. With intestinal mucosa and gonads, this makes hematopoietic tissue an especially delicate focus for cytoreductive or antimitotic operators, for example, those used to treat disease, contamination, and safe intervened issue. This tissue is likewise vulnerable to optional impacts of lethal specialists that influence the supply of supplements, for example, press; the leeway of poisons and metabolites, for example, urea; or the creation of key development factors, for example, erythropoietin and granulocyte state invigorating component (G-CSF). The outcomes of immediate or aberrant harm to platelets and their forerunners are possibly perilous. They incorporate hypoxia, discharge and contamination. The generation of platelets, or hematopoiesis, is an exceedingly managed arrangement of occasions by which platelet antecedents multiply and separate to meet the tenacious needs of oxygen transport, have safeguard and repair, hemostasis, and other key capacities .with a specific end goal to comprehend hematotoxicology one should first comprehend the parts of the blood, their motivation, and their site of creation. There are three fundamental sorts of platelets, the erythrocyte (the red platelet) the leukocyte (the white platelet) and the thrombocyte (the platelet). Each of the three courses in the veins in a liquid part, the plasma or serum.

**1.The Erythrocyte:** The essential capacity of the erythrocyte in the body is the vehicle of oxygen and carbon dioxide. Red platelets are profoundly specific for their motivation. They are biconcave and have no core. RBCs course in the blood for around 120 days before they are expelled to the spleen where the iron is reused to frame new heme particles. Their film as in different cells is comprised of phospholipid bilayer, proteins and sugars. The typical red platelet check is more often than not in the vicinity of 4 and 6 million cells for each m<sup>3</sup>. Erythrocytes take up a gigantic measure of the aggregate blood volume. The fundamental capacity of the erythrocyte is as a transporter it go about as a bearer and store for any exogenous chemicals which enter the body. This makes erythrocytes exceptionally delicate to the nearness of such chemicals in the body. Poisons can change the structure, generation, work and even the survival of an erythrocyte bringing about an adjustment in the volume of erythrocytes in the blood which, considering their

capacity in conveying oxygen to cells and expulsion of waste is greatly risky. Xenobiotics influence the creation, capacity and survival of erythrocytes. These impacts are most oftentimes shows an adjustment in the circling red cell mass, generally bringing about a decline. The operators that influence the oxygen partiality of hemoglobin prompt an expansion in the red cell mass (erythrocytosis). The adjustment in red platelet volume prompts an expansion in red platelet volume or a decline in red platelet volume. A decline in red platelet volume is generally normal. This is called pallor. Sickliness can be caused in two distinctive routes, first by pulverization of red platelets and also by the diminished generation of red platelets. Poisons because an expansion in the quantity of circling erythrocytes called erythrocytosis, basically a thickening of the blood. Erythrocyte creation is a constant procedure that is subject to visit cell division and a high rate of hemoglobin amalgamation. Blend of hemoglobin is subject to facilitated generation of globin chains and heme moieties. Variations from the norm that prompt diminished hemoglobin union are generally normal (e.g., press inadequacy) and are frequently connected with a decline in the MCV and hypochromasia i.e. expanded focal paleness of RBCs. Xenobiotics influence globin-chain amalgamation and adjust the piece of hemoglobin inside erythrocytes. This is shown by hydroxyurea, which has been found to build the union of g globin chains. A medication that adds to blood misfortune, for example, non-steroidal calming operators, with their expanded danger of gastrointestinal ulceration and dying, potentiate the danger of creating iron lack sickliness. Imperfections in the amalgamation of porphyrin ring of heme prompt sideroblastic pallor, with trademark collection of iron in bone marrow erythroblasts. The amassed press hastens inside mitochondria, causing the intracellular damage. Various xenobiotics meddle with at least one of the means in erythroblast heme union and result in sideroblastic weakness. Numerous hostile to proliferative operators utilized as a part of the treatment of threat restrain hematopoiesis, including erythropoiesis. Various xenobiotics, especially mixes containing sweet-smelling amines, are fit for actuating oxidative damage in erythrocytes.

**2. Haemoglobin** makes up ~95% of the aggregate volume of a red platelet and is in charge of oxygen transportation. It is a tetramer, comprising of four polypeptide

chains, 2 alpha globulin and 2 beta globulin. A heme group comprises of an iron particle and a porphyrin ring, a natural compound. As the structure there are four heme groups; each of which can tie an oxygen particle. Hemoglobin partiality for oxygen is inconceivably high and subsequently, a red blood cell which enters the lung turns out to be very soaked. This gives different territories where the nearness of poison in the blood meddle, for example, diminishing iron, an imperfection in the amalgamation of the porphyrin ring structure and modifications to the polypeptides of the tetramer. Methaemoglobin is shaped by the oxidation of oxyhaemoglobin. Methaemoglobin can't transport oxygen and is shaped by a substantial number of chemicals. The respiratory capacity of hemoglobin is weakened by the official of different ligands to the coupling site for instance carbon monoxide, a typical type of harming.

**3.The Leukocyte:** The leukocyte is a gathering of platelets (the white blood cells) which have numerous parts. These incorporate the basophils, neutrophils and eosinophils which are all things considered known as the granulocytes, the monocytes and the lymphocytes. Granulocytes and monocytes are phagocytic in nature, immersing and devastating remote bodies. Both are nucleated and not at all like red blood cells, fit for leaving the circulatory framework. As an extensive piece of the resistant reaction it enables the phagocytes to enter different tissues and demolish assaulting pathogens or cells which have experienced corruption or apoptosis. Aggravation and the safe reaction cause a tremendous increment in the quantity of coursing WBCs, including juvenile WBCs which are discharged trying to help the safe reaction. Change in morphology of neutrophils is a pointer of the nearness of a harmful specialist. Lethal impacts on granulocytes are wide and shifted. As in erythrocytes, high expansion in leukocytes makes granulocytes especially delicate to poisons in the blood. Operators like cisplatin are dangerous to both resting and isolating cells. The capacity of granulocytes is influenced by substances like liquor and glucocorticoids, which debilitate phagocytosis. Superoxide generation, which is obligatory for chemotaxis and microbial demise, turn out to be low in sedative abusers and in patients utilizing paraenteral heroin. In agranulocytosis an enormous drop in the quantity of flowing neutrophils happens. Xenobiotic instigates sudden agranulocytosis, cocurrent with presentation to the

medication, and will endure as long as the medication which was the reason is in the framework. The patient more often than not recuperate once the medication has left the framework gave danger of disease is checked, however a poison which impacts non submitted foundational microorganisms can prompt aggregate marrow disappointment, for example, in a plastic frailty.

**4. Carbon Monoxide:** Environmental factors, for example, poisons inspire a lethality reaction in the body. Carbon monoxide is an unscented and bland harmful gas that is delivered as a result of the burning of hydrocarbons. Introduction to elevated amounts of carbon monoxide for a specific timeframe evoke lethal reactions in the blood; carbon monoxide presentation occur through the accompanying means: poor establishment of warming gadgets, blocked smokestacks and vapor from auto debilitates. The course of passage of carbon monoxide is through the lungs by inward breath, it is circulated around the body by aloof dispersion. Inactive. For an atom to be capable of latently diffuse it must be lipophilic, there must be a focus slope along the layer and the particle must be ionized. Carbon monoxide causes intense harmful impacts in the blood; the CO particle ties to hemoglobin to shape a carboxy-hemoglobin complex, this keeps oxygen atoms from having the capacity to tie to the hemoglobin and subsequently oxygen can't be transported to fundamental tissues, for example, the mind and the heart. Absence of circulation of oxygen makes cells wind up noticeably anoxic, this at last prompt conditions, for example, cardiovascular tissue disappointment, mind harm and eventually cell passing. The level of danger caused by CO harming is reliant on term of introduction and the centralization of CO measured in parts per million.

---

## 9.6 ORGAN FUNCTION TESTS

---

Gathering of individual test used to assess organ usefulness or an aggregate term for an assortment of individual tests/methodology that assess organ work Useful to identify the nearness of illness, checking reaction to treatment and assessing visualization. Organ work tests are useful instruments in assessing the wellbeing status of a person. The tests are finished utilizing an organ framework approach i.e.

renal, hepatic, gastric, and pancreatic and so on. There are a few factors, for example, race, eat less, age, sex, menstrual cycle and level of physical action, issues with accumulation and treatment of the example, non-physician endorsed drugs, doctor prescribed medications and various non-disease related components which influence tests. The organ work tests are named either obtrusive or non-intrusive tests.

---

### **9.6.1 INVASIVE TESTS**

---

These tests require entrance of the skin or inclusion of instruments or gadgets into a body hole. The level of hazard with intrusive tests fluctuates from moderately minor dangers, for example, the torment, dying, and wounding related with venipuncture.

Examples of intrusive tests are gathering of blood (venipuncture), addition of a focal venous catheter, accumulation of cerebrospinal liquid and so on.

---

### **9.6.2 NON-INVASIVE TESTS**

---

In these tests, the skin isn't infiltrated or instruments are not embedded into body openings. They posture little hazard to the patient.

Examples of non-obtrusive tests are chest radiograph, examination of unexpectedly voided pee, stool mysterious blood investigation and so on.

---

### **9.6.3 RENAL FUNCTION TEST**

---

The fundamental capacity of the kidney is discharge of water dissolvable waste items from our body. The kidney has different filtration, discharge and secretary capacities. Unsettling of any of this capacity would bring about either diminished discharge of waste items or consequently their aggregation in the body or loss of some key supplement from the body. By the level of these excretory items and supplements in the pee and in blood we can make a precise figuring to translate the productivity of the kidney. The practical unit of the kidney is known as a nephron. It comprises of two fundamental parts, the glomerulus and the tubular framework. The

glomerulus is made out of a Bowman's capsule and a tuft of capillaries epitomized by the Bowman's capsule. The basic role of the glomerulus is filtrations. The filtered vessels channel into the glomerulus all the water, electrolytes, little proteins, supplements, for example, sugar and so on and excretory items, for example, urea and so on. The filtration is reliant on the size and charge of the particles. The Tubular framework is in charge of re assimilation of the majority of the water, electrolytes, and supplements and additionally discharges of the rest of the supplements by methods for emission into the tubules. These tubules are in charge of the convergence of pee. The segments of the Kidney work test can be extensively isolated into two classes i.e. tests that measure the glomerular capacity and tests that measure the tubular capacity.

The tests that are a piece of the kidney/renal function test board are:

- a) **Urine examination:** This examination comprises of a physical examination where the shading, smell, amount, specific gravity and so on of the pee is noted. Minute examination of pee is done to preclude any discharge cells, RBC throws, Crystals. Likewise a subjective examination is done as to give signs to the nature and area of the sore in the renal framework.
- b) **Serum Urea:** Urea is the final result of protein catabolism. The urea is created from the amino gathering of the amino acids and is delivered in the liver by methods for the Urea cycle. Urea experiences filtrations at the glomerulus and also emission and reabsorption at the tubular level. The ascent in the level of serum urea is by and large observed as a marker of renal brokenness particularly glomerular brokenness. Urea level just ascends when the glomerular capacity is lessened underneath half. The ordinary serum urea level is between 20-45 mg/dl. The level is influenced by eat less carbs and in addition non kidney related disarranges. Different reasons for protein catabolism, for example, hyper metabolic conditions, starvation and so on causes expanded blood urea levels; the level of urea additionally diminishes in the event of hepatic damage. Urea is measured in indicative lab by UV active strategy utilizing  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate as a  $\text{NH}_3^+$  acceptor in nearness of chemical glutamate dehydrogenase. It is likewise

measured calorimetrically by Berthelot's end point technique and read in obvious range utilizing a calorimeter.

- c) **Blood urea nitrogen (BUN):** The Serum urea level is communicated as blood urea nitrogen, BUN is computed from the serum urea level. The sub-atomic weight of urea is 60 and it contains two nitrogen particles of consolidated nuclear weight of 28. The commitment of nitrogen to the aggregate weight of urea in serum is  $28/60$  that is equivalent to 0.47. Henceforth the serum urea levels are changed over to BUN by increasing it by 0.47. An ascent in blood nitrogen level is known as azotemia.
- d) **Calcium:** This test measures the measure of Calcium in blood, not the calcium in bones. The body needs it to assemble and settle bones and teeth enable nerves to work, make muscles constriction, enable blood to cluster, and help the heart to work. The Calcium test is for issues with the parathyroid organs or kidneys, certain sorts of growths and bone issues, aggravation of the pancreas (pancreatitis), and kidney stones. Typical Results: 8.5 to 10.2 mg/dl.
- e) **Phosphorus:** Phosphorus is a mineral that makes up 1% of a man's aggregate body weight. The body needs phosphorus to manufacture and repair bones and teeth, enable nerves to capacity, and influence muscles to contract. The Kidneys help control the measure of phosphate in the blood. Additional phosphate is sifted by the kidneys and goes through of the body in the pee. It assumes an essential part in the body's usage of sugars and fats and in the combination of protein for the development, support, and repair of cells and tissues. Large amounts of phosphorus in blood just happen in individuals with extreme kidney infection or serious brokenness of their calcium direction. Unnecessarily abnormal amounts of phosphorus in the blood are uncommon.
- f) **Protein:** Protein in pee is recognizably expanded in renal infection of any etiology, aside from obstacle, and is in this way an extremely touchy, general screening test for renal illness. The degree of proteinuria gives valuable data as more noteworthy the level of proteinuria in the nephritic disorder ( $> 3 - 4$  g/day). In renal ailment with the nephritic disorder, the urinary protein discharge rate is as a rule around 1 - 2 g/day. In tubulo-interstitial ailment, pee protein is for the most part under 1 g/day. Just in the nephritic disorder the pee protein misfortune adequately extraordinary to bring about hypoproteinemia.

- g) Serum creatinine:** Creatine is a little tripeptide found in the muscles. It remains in its phosphorylated frame and discharges vitality for any burst of solid action. It is discharged from the muscles amid normal wear and tear and is changed over to creatinine (its interior anhydride). It isn't a poisonous waste. It is basically utilized as a marker of renal capacity. Creatinine is uninhibitedly separated at the glomerulus and a little degree emitted into the tubules. So any issue with glomerular filtrations significantly affects the discharge of creatinine bringing about a much substantial rise in serum creatinine level. Ordinary serum creatinine level is 0.6 to 1.5 mg/dl. Serum creatinine is a superior pointer of renal capacity and more particularly glomerular capacity than urea. For a specific individual the creatinine level is subject to the bulk and muscle wear and tear. There might be noteworthy distinction in creatinine level of people with tremendously contrasting bulk. Creatinine is measured calorimetrically by Jaffe's technique. Eg. A muscle head or competitor will have higher creatinine levels than an inactive work area specialist.
- h) Creatinine freedom:** Creatinine is separated in the glomerulus and its reabsorption at the tubular level is irrelevant. On account of this creatinine freedom is utilized to quantify Glomerular Filtration Rate (GFR). It is measured for a time of 24 hrs. For this pee is gathered for 24 hour time frame and blood test likewise gathered. The grouping of creatinine is measured both in the pee and additionally the serum test. The ordinary scope of creatinine leeway is: Male: 100 – 120 ml/min, Females: 95 – 105 ml/min
- i) Urea clearance:** Urea freedom is the measure of blood from which kidney clears urea in one moment. This is measured by measuring the centralization of urea in blood, convergence of urea in pee and measure of pee discharged over a one hour interim. Urea leeway is not as much as its glomerular filtration as a portion of the urea that is separated at the glomerulus is reabsorbed at the tubules. To gauge urea leeway first the patient is made to void pee and afterward he is made to drink two glasses of water. At that point the pee is gathered following a hour and a blood example is additionally gathered in the meantime. At that point the patient pee test is gathered after one more hour. The urea level in the two pee tests and the blood test is measured. The pee volume is figured as pee yield every moment. Most extreme urea freedom of a normal individual or



body surface range of 1.73sq m is 75 ml/min and a standard urea leeway is 54 ml/min. A urea freedom underneath 60% of standard is viewed as hindered.

- j) **Inulin leeway:** Inulin is a little polysaccharide of low atomic weight made up of fructose. To gauge glomerular filtrate the substance utilized ought to have the qualities like; It ought to be non dangerous, Should not be processed in the body, Should be totally separated at the glomerulus, neither should nor be discharged or reabsorbed at the tubules. GFR is the measure of blood that passes however and is separated through the glomerulus in a moment. To gauge Inulin freedom first Inulin is presented in the blood by methods for an ease back consistent mixture to keep up an enduring conc. of Inulin in the blood. This is finished by first mixing 30 ml of 10% inulin in 250 ml of ordinary saline implanted at a rate of 20 ml/min for wanted fixation. At that point 70 ml of 10% inulin in 500 ml saline is mixed at a rate of 4 ml/min to keep up the coveted focus. The patient is made a request to micturate 20 minutes after the second mixture and the pee is disposed of and the time is noted. After precisely a hour, another specimen of pee and blood is gathered. The volume of pee and the conc. of inulin is measured in both the serum and pee. Ordinary inulin freedom is 120 to 130 ml/minute for a normal individual with a body surface territory of 1.73 sq m. An underneath typical inulin leeway demonstrates a weakened glomerular capacity.
- k) **Dilution test:** The weakening test is a measure of working of the tubules. If there should be an occurrence of liquid over-burden of our body the tubules reabsorb lesser measures of water bringing about discharge of weakened pee. For this test the patient is put on overnight quick and after that in the morning the patient is made to drink 1200 ml of water over an era of 30 minutes. At that point the pee tests are gathered each hour for 4 hours. The particular gravity of the examples is measured and atleast one of the specimens ought to have a particular gravity of 1.003 or less. In the event that none of the specimens have the particular gravity of 1.003 or less this is an indication of tubular brokenness.
- l) **Concentration test:** if there should be an occurrence of water lack in the body the kidney can think pee and preserve water. This is finished by expanding the reabsorption of water from the glomerular filtrate at the tubular level. So to quantify the capacity of the kidney to preserve water and think pee is a measure

of tubular capacity. For this test the patient isn't permitted to take any sustenance or water after the night feast. The initial three pee tests go in the morning are gathered and their particular gravity is measured. In an ordinary individual the particular gravity of one of the specimens ought to be over 1.025 or above. On the off chance that the particular gravity stays beneath 1.025 then it is an indication of tubular brokenness.

**m) Electrolyte levels:** The reason for the kidney isn't simply water adjust and discharge yet in addition to keep up the electrolyte adjust of our body. Kidneys effectively reabsorb or discharge electrolytes to keep up the electrolyte adjust of the body. Inferable from their little size all electrolytes are separated at the glomerulus. After filtration a large portion of the electrolytes are retained back at the tubular level yet any issue at the tubular level will bring about non ingestion and over the top loss of electrolytes in pee.

---

### 9.6.4 HEPATIC FUNCTION TEST

---

Liver capacity tests are a gathering of tests done to evaluate the useful limit of the liver and any phone harm to the liver cells. It is done to evaluate utilitarian capacities like engineered capacity i.e. by measuring the different plasma proteins, for example, egg whites and prothrombin that are orchestrated by the liver; additionally lipids which are likewise combined in the liver and its secretory/excretory capacities by measuring the serum billirubin level. The regular tests that frame some portion of the liver capacity test profile are Serum Bilirubin both conjugated and unconjugated, add up to serum proteins and egg whites globulin proportion, liver catalysts transaminases AST (SGOT), ALT (SGPT) others are ALP, GGT, LDH and Prothrombin time.

**Serum Bilirubin:** Bilirubin is one of the final results of haem digestion and is gotten from the haem part of the hemoglobin atom. It is a yellow hued shade. Liver assumes a critical part in the digestion of bilirubin. After the breakdown of haem segment of the hemoglobin atom 'unconjugated bilirubin' is insoluble in water. It is exchanged from the site of RBC and haem breakdown, for example, the spleen to the liver for 'conjugation' bound to egg whites. At the liver it is conjugated with

glucuronic corrosive with the assistance of catalyst glucuronyl transferase. This conjugation influences bilirubin to water dissolvable and this conjugated bilirubin is discharged into the bile. The typical scope of bilirubin is; add up to Bilirubin 0.2 to 1 mg/dl, Unconjugated Bilirubin 0.1 to 0.6 mg/dl, and Conjugated bilirubin 0.1 to 0.4 mg/dl. An ascent of bilirubin level to that of 2 mg/dl brings about the side effects of jaundice which is set apart by testimony of bilirubin in the different mucous films. Jaundice is partitioned into three sorts relying upon its etiology:

- a) **Pre hepatic jaundice:** For this situation the reason for jaundice is at the level of bilirubin preparing before it achieves the liver. Most normal reason is over creation of bilirubin because of hemolytic issue. For this situation the ascent in the level of unconjugated bilirubin is more than conjugated bilirubin subsequently there is an ascent altogether and circuitous bilirubin.
- b) **Hepatic jaundice:** This is caused by cell brokenness of the liver thus is additionally called hepatocellular jaundice. It is caused by the powerlessness of the liver cells to process and discharge the bilirubin in the framework. It is found in hepatitis, cirrhosis of liver and so forth. In this jaundice there is ascend altogether, immediate and additionally roundabout bilirubin levels.
- c) **Post hepatic jaundice:** This is otherwise called obstructive jaundice as it is caused by obstacle to the outpouring of bile coming about is reabsorption of conjugated bilirubin and it showing up in the serum. It is caused via carcinoma of the mouth of bother bladder, stone in the bile conduit and so forth. In this kind of jaundice an ascent altogether and in addition coordinate (conjugated) bilirubin is seen.

The basic technique for measuring serum bilirubin level is the Diazo strategy utilizing Diazotized sufanic corrosive to change over bilirubin into an azobilirubin the shading power of which is measured colorimetrically at a wavelength between 555nm (550 to 580 nm).

**Serum Albumin and Albumin Globulin Ratio:** Serum egg whites is an imperative serum protein key for keeping up the plasmaoncotic weight and additionally goes about as a bearer for different natural substances and medications. Serum egg whites are solely blended by liver and consequently the level of serum egg whites gives us

a supply of the manufactured capacity of the liver. The reason for fall of serum egg whites is protein unhealthiness. The typical aggregate protein level is 5 to 8.5 gm/dl. The aggregate serum egg whites level is 3.5 to 5 gm/dl. The aggregate plasma globulin level is ascertained by subtracting the plasma egg whites from the aggregate protein level and is ordinarily in the scope of 2 to 2.5 gm/dl. The ordinary range for albumin:globulin proportion is 1.2 to 1.5. Yet, with hepatic brokenness this proportion retreats towards 1 as the manufactured capacity of liver is traded off. The inversion of the proportion i.e. in the event that the esteem subsides underneath 1, it is an unfavorable sign and may check an infective/provocative pathology set apart by ascend in serum globulin level and fall in serum egg whites levels. To quantify serum egg whites the Bromocresol green strategy is utilized. Egg whites within the sight of bromocresol green at a somewhat acidic pH give a yellow green to blue green shading. The power of this shading is subject to the convergence of egg whites in the specimen. This force is perused at a wavelength of 630 nm. To gauge the aggregate protein substance of the specimen the biuret technique it utilized. In this technique the cupric particles of copper (II) sulfate, display in the biuret reagent, frame a violet shaded complex with the proteins in a somewhat antacid medium. The force of the shading framed is measured at a wavelength of 540 nm (530 to 550 nm).

**Prothrombin Time:** Prothrombin is a coagulating factor (thickening variable II) and it frames a vital piece of both the characteristic and extraneous pathway. Its dynamic frame is Thrombin (additionally coagulating factor IIa). It is a serine peptidase which changes over fibrinogen to fibrin. Prothrombin is orchestrated in the liver. Furthermore, subsequently prothrombin action in plasma is utilized to quantify the engineered capacity of liver. Prothrombin time is measured by taking human plasma from blood that has been gathered in tube containing citrate as an anticoagulant. The plasma is placed in a computerized machine which adds an abundance of calcium to switch the anticoagulant impacts of citrates and measures the time taken for fibrinogen to be changed over to fibrin subsequently measures the movement of thrombin in the plasma. The prothrombin time contrasts in understanding to the expository technique utilized. An International affectability record (ISI) esteem is set apart on the unit; this demonstrates the measure of tissue

calculate exhibit the pack against a universally acknowledged standard. The ISI esteem is by and large 1 to 2.

A proportion of 0.8 to 1.2 is viewed as typical for patients not on warfarin. For people on warfarin for any confusion an INR of 2.0 to 3.0 is the objective.

**Liver Enzymes:** Liver catalysts alongside bilirubin are the most normally measured parameter measured in the liver capacity test. These compounds are hepatic in source and they are spilled into the serum with the annihilation of hepatic cells. Liver chemicals are measured to get a thought of the cell affront on the liver and are expanded in a wide assortment of conditions, for example, viral hepatitis, dangerous hepatitis, and cirrhosis of liver and so on. The ordinarily measured chemicals Transaminases: AST (SGOT), ALT (SGPT), Transpeptidases: GGT and Phosphatase: ALP.

**(a)Transaminases:** They are a gathering of catalysts that exchange the amino gathering from an amino corrosive to  $\alpha$  keto corrosive changing over the  $\alpha$  keto corrosive into an amino corrosive while changing over the amino corrosive into a keto corrosive. The transaminases that are measured in the liver capacity test are ALT and AST. Alanine transaminase (ALT) catalyzes the accompanying response:



Aspartate transaminase (AST) catalyzes the accompanying response:



The ordinary level of ALT in serum is 7 to 40 IU/L. The typical level of AST in serum is 8 to 40 IU/L. An expansion in AST or ALT levels indications at damage to the liver parenchyma tissue. ALT is a more particular marker of hepatic damage than AST as AST height is additionally observed in cardiovascular tissue damage, haemolysis and muscle tissue. To quantify the level of transaminases the response catalyzed by them is coupled to a response in which NADH is spent bringing about change in the photometric force when perused in the UV run at 340 nm. It is an UV dynamic strategy.

**For ALT (SGPT)**

Alanine +  $\alpha$  Keto glutarate  $\rightarrow$  Pyruvate + Glutamate

Pyruvate + NADH + H<sup>+</sup> LDH (Lactate dehydrogenase)  $\rightarrow$  Lactate + NAD<sup>+</sup>

**For AST (SGOT)**

Aspartate +  $\alpha$  Keto glutarate  $\rightarrow$  Oxaloacetate + Glutamate

Oxaloacetate + NADH + H<sup>+</sup> MDH (Malate dehydrogenase)  $\rightarrow$  Malate + NAD<sup>+</sup>

- a) **Alkaline Phosphatase:** It is a hydrolase that expels phosphates from a wide range of atoms, for example, proteins, nucleotides and so on. It is found in cells coating the biliary framework subsequently an ascent in its level is characteristic of harm to the biliary tree because of cholestasis. It is because of stone hindering the substantial pipes or intrahepatic impediment, aggravation of the biliary channels. Alkaline phosphatase is likewise found in placenta and bones. Subsequently the level is additionally expanded in developing youngsters in whom bones experience redesigning and in Paget's ailment in grown-ups. Typical level of alkaline phosphatase is between 45 to 115 IU/L. The strategy for measuring the level of alkaline phosphatase is an active technique utilizing p-nitrophenylphosphate as substrate for the compound and measuring rate of arrangement of the shaded substrate (p-nitrophenol) shaped from the response. This estimation of the shading power is done colorimetrically at a wavelength of 405 nm.
- b) **Gamma glutamyl transpeptidase:** It is another catalyst particular to the biliary tree and a more particular marker of cholestasis and harm to the biliary tree. It is likewise an exceptionally particular marker and is brought up in even moment and subclinical harm to the biliary tree. Its typical range is in the middle of 0 to 42 IU/l.

---

## 9.6.5 THYROID FUNCTION TESTS

---

Thyroid capacity tests are utilized to build up the level of thyroid capacity (e.g., hyperthyroid, hypothyroid, euthyroid) and the reaction to suppressant or substitution treatment. Thyroid capacity is surveyed by assessing the serum groupings of the free

hormones thyroxine (T<sub>4</sub>) and triiodothyronine (T<sub>3</sub>) and by various aberrant strategies.

**Free Thyroxine Index:** The free thyroxine record (FT<sub>4</sub>I) is the result of the deliberate T<sub>4</sub> and the triiodothyronine take-up (T<sub>3</sub>U). It considers the outright hormone level and the coupling limit of thyroid-restricting globulin. The FT<sub>4</sub>I is diminished in hypothyroidism and expanded in hyperthyroidism.

**Thyroid-Stimulating Hormone (Thyrotropin):** Serum TSH, or thyrotropin, levels are utilized to separate between thyroid hypothyroidism and pituitary hypothyroidism. The TSH level is raised in thyroidal hypothyroidism and uniquely diminished in pituitary hypothyroidism.

**Thyroid Uptake of Radioiodine:** Radioactive iodine (<sup>123</sup>I or <sup>131</sup>I) is controlled orally, and the radioactivity over the thyroid organ is checked at different interims. The typical radioactive iodine take-up (RAIU) is around 10% to 35%.

**Thyrotropin-Releasing Hormone:** Thyrotropin-discharging hormone (TRH) fortifies the pituitary to discharge TSH. Infusion of manufactured TRH regularly causes an expansion in TSH in around 30 minutes.

**Triiodothyronine Uptake:** The triiodothyronine take-up (T<sub>3</sub>U) test is an in vitro test that by implication evaluates the measure of thyroid-restricting globulin in the serum.

---

### 9.6.6 PANCREATIC FUNCTION TESTS

---

**Amylase:** Amylase is discharged by the pancreas, inside, parotids, and gynecologic framework. Despite the fact that not particular for pancreatitis, serum amylase is less demanding to gauge than is lipase and is utilized as a typical screening and observing parameter for intense pancreatitis. Notwithstanding, in constant pancreatitis the pancreas might be "wore out" and unfit to discharge amylase.

**Peptide:** C peptide is an idle peptide chain discharged from beta cells in equimolar sums with insulin and found in the serum in around a 5:1 to 15:1 proportion with insulin. C peptide is now and again used to survey pancreatic capacity.

**Glucose:** Serum glucose focuses are utilized to survey pancreatic capacity and the reaction to insulin substitution treatment.

**Fasting Serum Glucose:** The serum test is gotten following 10 to 14 hours of fasting. The fasting serum glucose is normally gotten before breakfast after an overnight quick.

**Glucose Tolerance Test:** The glucose resilience test (GTT) is utilized to analyze diabetes mellitus and gestational diabetes. Patients quick for 10 to 16 hours before the test and are then gave around 75 g of glucose. Serial blood tests are acquired, and the serum glucose fixation is resolved. Regularly, the serum blood glucose is under 200 mg/dl at 30, 60, and a hour and a half and under 140 mg/dl at 2 hours.

**Irregular Serum Glucose:** The arbitrary serum glucose test can be gotten whenever without fasting.

**Glycosylated Hemoglobin:** Glycosylated hemoglobin is shaped when hemoglobin is irreversibly glycosylated after presentation to high glucose levels. Glycosylated hemoglobin surveys long haul control of insulin treatment and separates factitious hyperglycemia from diabetes.

**Insulin:** Fasting serum insulin is here and there gotten amid the evaluation of pancreatic capacity.

**Lipase:** Lipase is a particular marker for intense pancreatic ailment. Increments in serum lipase parallel increments in serum amylase. Be that as it may, in interminable pancreatitis the pancreas might be "wore out" and unfit to discharge lipase.



---

### 9.6.7 CARDIOVASCULAR FUNCTION TEST

---

**Cardiac Enzymes:** The example and time course of the presence of compounds in the blood after cardiovascular muscle cell harm are utilized to analyze myocardial localized necrosis (MI).

**Creatine Kinase (CK; creatine phosphokinase):** It is found in skeletal muscle; heart muscle; and the cerebrum, bladder, stomach, and colon. Isoenzyme portions distinguish the kind of tissue harmed. CK-BB (CK1) is found in the mind, bladder, stomach, and colon; CK-MB (CK2) is found in heart tissue; and CK-MM (CK3) is found in skeletal muscle. CK-MB is recognized in the blood inside 3 to 5 hours after a myocardial dead tissue; levels crest in around 10 to 20 hours and standardize inside around 3 days.

**Lactic Dehydrogenase (LDH):** It is found in an assortment of body tissues. Isoenzyme parts are utilized to distinguish the sort of tissue damage. LDH1 and LDH2 are found in the heart, cerebrum, and erythrocytes. LDH2 regularly represents the most noteworthy level of aggregate serum LDH. After a myocardial localized necrosis (MI) the ascent in LDH1 focus surpasses the ascent in LDH2 fixation. LDH3 is found in the cerebrum and kidneys. LDH4 is found in the liver, skeletal muscle, and kidneys. LDH5 is found in the liver, skeletal muscle, and ileum. LDH increments inside around 12 hours after a myocardial dead tissue, top in the vicinity of 24 and 48 hours, and standardizes by about day 10.

**Cholesterol:** Cholesterol is isolated into lipoproteins by protein electrophoresis. Low-thickness lipoprotein (LDL) is emphatically associated with coronary course illness. High thickness lipoprotein (HDL) is conversely connected with coronary course ailment.

**Responsive protein:** C-receptive protein is a biologic marker of fundamental irritation. Increment in C-receptive protein focus expands danger of myocardial localized necrosis, stroke and fringe blood vessel infection.

**Myoglobin:** Myoglobin is a little protein found in heart and skeletal muscle. The nearness of myoglobin in the pee or plasma is a moderately delicate marker of cell harm.

**Triglycerides:** Triglycerides are found in low-thickness lipoproteins (VLDLs) and chylomicrons.

**Troponins:** These are mind boggling proteins (troponin I, C, and T) that intercede the actin and myosin cooperation in muscle. Troponin I and T are particular to cardiovascular muscle and are utilized to recognize heart muscle damage. Troponin I and T fixations increment inside a couple of hours of heart muscle damage and stay lifted for 5 to 7 days.

**Teratogenic:** The synthetic species that reason birth absconds are called teratogens. These species harm embryonic or fetal cells which result in birth surrenders. Be that as it may, transformations in germ cells (egg or sperm cells) may cause birth abandons. The biochemical components incorporate compound restraint by xenobiotics ;( synthetic substances that are unfamiliar to living frameworks), hardship of fundamental substrates for embryo, for example, vitality and vitamins and adjustment of the penetrability of placental layer.

---

## 9.7 REPRODUCTIVE TEST

---

---

### 9.7.1 HYSTEROSALPINGOGRAM

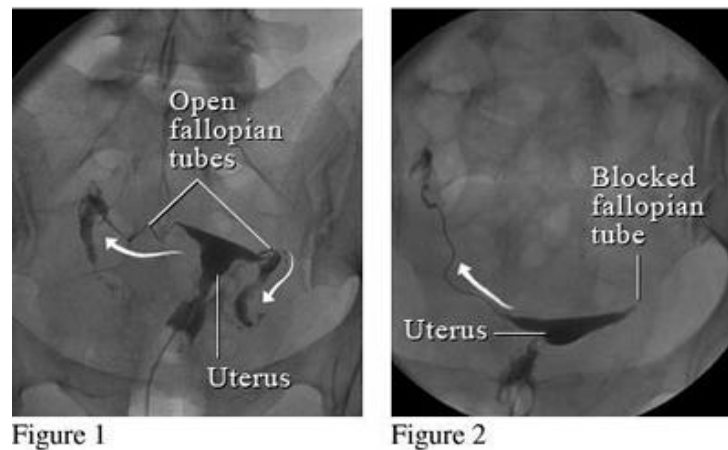
---

Hysterosalpingogram (HSG) is a x-beam that analyzes within your uterus and fallopian tubes. This test can enable your specialist to check whether your fallopian tubes are blocked. This test can be exceptionally useful, since blocked tubes are one of the more typical reasons for barrenness. Here is the manner by which the hysterosalpingogram procedure works:

1. Your specialist infuses a color through the vagina and cervix into the uterine cavity.
2. Dye fills the fallopian tubes on the off chance that they are open, yet may not enter the tubes on the off chance that they are blocked.

3. If the color spills out into your stomach cavity, your specialist will realize that your fallopian tubes are open.

A hysterosalpingogram can likewise enable your specialist to find any uterine variations from the norm, polyps, fibroids, and scar tissue. This methodology may make mellow direct cramping.



*Fig 10.1 Hysterosalpingogram (HSG)*

---

### 9.7.2 LAPAROSCOPY

---

In the event that pelvic variations from the norm are associated causes with barrenness, your specialist may suggest laparoscopy, a negligibly obtrusive surgery. Here is the means by which it works:

1. Your specialist will embed a laparoscope (a little fiber optic telescope) into your mid-region.
2. Through little entry points (0.5 cm), your specialist can investigate your fallopian tubes, ovaries, and uterus.
3. In this technique, your specialist has the capacity to view and treat pelvic structure irregularities. He or she can likewise treat blockages, scar tissue, and other harm.

Recuperation from laparoscopy is fairly fast, and conveys a generally safe for creating attachments (sinewy scar tissue that can cause fruitfulness issues).

---

### 9.7.3 HYSTEROSCOPY

---

Hysteroscopy distinguishes and treat uterine conditions. Here is the means by which it works:

1. Your specialist embeds a thin hysteroscope (a fiber optic telescope) through the cervix and into the uterus.
2. During this system, your specialist can see your uterine depression and analyze fibroids, polyps, scar tissue, and different issues.
3. Hysteroscopy might be performed in the workplace while you are conscious, or as an operation under general anesthesia.

---

### 9.7.4 SALINE HYSTEROGRAM

---

A saline hysteroqram (SHG) is otherwise called a saline implantation sonogram (SIS), water ultrasound, or sono-hysteroqram. Here is the way it works:

1. An SHG happens amid a transvaginal ultrasound.
2. Your specialist infuses saline into your cervix and uterus to watch the dividers of your uterus.
3. This method enables your specialist to recognize any developments in the uterine dividers, similar to fibroids or polyps.

---

### 9.7.5 ENDOMETRIAL BIOPSY

---

An endometrial biopsy can enable your specialist to distinguish uterine, menstrual, and hormonal scatters that might be reasons for barrenness. On the off chance that you experience the system, here is what's in store:

1. Your specialist will give you a pregnancy test with a specific end goal to secure a conceivable pregnancy.
2. The biopsy will occur a few days before your period begins.
3. A little specimen of tissue will be taken from the endometrium (internal uterine covering) for perception.

A few ladies encounter torment and cramping amid and after the method.

---

### 9.7.6 CERVICAL MUCUS TEST AND POSTCOITAL TEST

---

Now and again, issues with cervical bodily fluid (CM) can hinder pregnancy. The cervical bodily fluid test and postcoital test (PCT) can offer your specialist some data on the quality and consistency of your CM. It can likewise offer data on how your accomplice's sperm cooperates with your CM. A decent time to assess your CM is around the season of the LH surge, just before ovulation happens.

Shouldn't something be said about protection?

Some protection designs cover ripeness tests and treatment, and a few issues can be effectively treated. Treatment may not be as costly as you think.

Richness testing can bring solace

Going through richness testing may feel overpowering and obtrusive. Locate a regenerative endocrinologist you trust and express your worries.

Keep in mind, your specialist had numerous claims to fame to look over and the one they picked was regenerative endocrinology. They have devoted their professions to helping men and ladies – like you – understand their fantasy of turning into a parent and are delicate to the passionate toll fruitfulness testing and treatment can take.

**Transvaginal ultrasound.** A specialist puts a ultrasound "wand" into the vagina and conveys it near the pelvic organs. Utilizing sound waves, he'll have the capacity to see pictures of the ovaries and uterus to check for issues there.

---

## 9.8 CARCINOGENIC TEST

---

"The term cancer-causing agent indicates a synthetic substance or a blend of compound substances which incite tumor or increment its frequency" by **UNECE, 2004**. A substitute definition is that cancer-causing substances are ones that "prompt tumors (amiable or threatening), increment their rate or danger, or abbreviate the season of tumor event when they are breathed in, infused, dermally connected, or ingested" (**Maurici, et al., 2005**).

Cancer-causing agents are arranged by their method of activity as genotoxic or nongenotoxic cancer-causing agents. Genotoxic cancer-causing agents start carcinogenesis by coordinate communication with DNA, bringing about DNA harm or chromosomal distortions that can be recognized by genotoxicity tests (OECD, 2006). Nongenotoxic cancer-causing agents will be operators that don't straightforwardly cooperate with DNA and are accepted to upgrade tumor improvement by influencing quality articulation, flag transduction, as well as cell multiplication. In creature thinks about, most powerful mutagens are likewise observed to be cancer-causing (Maurici, et al., 2005, p. 177). Substances that actuate tumors in creatures are considered as assumed or suspected human cancer-causing agents until the point when persuading proof in actuality is displayed (UNECE, 2004, p. 167).

---

### 9.8.1 THE ANIMAL TEST(S)

---

The customary test for cancer-causing nature is the long haul rat cancer-causing nature bioassay depicted in Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) Test Guideline (TG) 451. The target of this test is "to watch test creatures for a noteworthy bit of their life expectancy for the advancement of neoplastic sores amid or after presentation to different measurements of a test substance by a fitting course of organization." The examination is normally directed utilizing two species – rats and mice of both genders. The creatures are dosed by oral, dermal, or inward breath exposures, in view of the normal kind of human introduction. Dosing commonly keeps going around two years. Certain creature wellbeing highlights are observed all through the examination, yet the key appraisal lives in the full obsessive investigation of the creature tissues and organs when the investigation is ended.

Two endpoints in creature bioassays, cancer-causing nature and perpetual harmfulness, can be consolidated to diminish creature use, as depicted in OECD TG 453.

The International Life Sciences Institute (ILSI) Health and Environmental Science Institute's (HESI) Alternatives to Carcinogenicity Testing Technical Committee

facilitated an extensive scale inquire about program to describe various transgenic rat models proposed for use in human tumor hazard evaluation by **Robinson and MacDonald, 2001**. None of these models were viewed as adequate as independent examines. Most could recognize genotoxic aggravates that a genotoxicity test battery would as of now identify, however better discovery of nongenotoxic cancer-causing agents is as yet required by **Goodman, 2001**.

Controllers at a 2003 ILSI-HESI workshop on the utilization of transgenic creatures for cancer-causing nature testing presumed that these measures ought to be incorporated with customary test strategies (ILSI-HESI, 2003). The controllers considered the p53+/- and Tg.RasH2 models valuable in giving information to administrative purposes and the Tg.AC display helpful in assessing dermal items.

---

### 9.8.2 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS & TEST GUIDELINES

---

The UN Globally Harmonized System (GHS) characterizes cancer-causing agents under two classifications in view of the quality of the confirmation: Category 1 chemicals are known or assumed human cancer-causing agents (Category 1A if in light of human information and 2A if in view of creature information); Category 2 chemicals are suspected human cancer-causing agents (UNECE, 2004, p. 167). As per GHS direction, concoction prompted tumorigenesis includes hereditary changes; in this manner, chemicals that are mutagenic in warm blooded creatures may warrant being named cancer-causing agents.

The GHS portrays other "critical elements" to be thought about in cancer-causing agent danger characterization, for example, the area and number of tumors, tumor sort and attributes, reactions in both genders and additionally numerous species, importance of the method of activity to people, and the sky is the limit from there. The OECD's direction on these variables is given in the 2001 Harmonized Integrated Classification System for Human Health and Environmental Hazards of Chemical Substances and Mixtures (ENV/JM/MONO(2001)6), and in the 2005 Proposal for Guidance on How to Consider Important Factors in Classification of Carcinogenicity (ENV/JM/HCL(2005)2/REV). The 2005 OECD direction talks

about different systems for surveying the "vital factors" and expresses that "the heaviness of confirmation investigation called for in GHS is an integrative approach which considers imperative factors in deciding cancer-causing potential alongside the quality of proof examination."

OECD TGs 451, 452, and 453 give data to leading cancer-causing nature and endless lethality thinks about. The OECD Guidance Notes for Analysis and Evaluation of Chronic Toxicity and Carcinogenicity Studies (ENV/JM/MONO (2002)19) "gives wide direction on ways to deal with risk appraisal and on a portion of the issues and traps that may emerge amid an evaluation."

The US Environmental Protection Agency's (EPA) reconsidered its Guidelines for Carcinogen Risk Assessment (EPA/630/P-03/001B) in 2005. The changed rules utilize five descriptors (Carcinogenic to Humans, Likely to be Carcinogenic To Humans, Suggestive Evidence of Carcinogenic Potential, Inadequate Information to Assess Carcinogenic Potential, Not Likely to Be Carcinogenic to Humans) that are trailed by a weight of proof account to depict the cancer-causing capability of a substance. The EPA gives extra data on its Web page Evaluating Pesticides for Carcinogenic Potential.

The International Conference on Harmonization of Technical Requirements for Registration of Pharmaceuticals for Human Use (ICH) and medication administrative specialists give direction on testing to the cancer-causing capability of new medications. Long haul danger concentrates, for example, cancer-causing nature testing are generally led simultaneously with clinical trials. Jena, et al. (2005) give a decent diagram of cancer-causing nature testing for sedate improvement.

The International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC), some portion of the World Health Organization (WHO), gives Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans and has assessed the cancer-causing danger of more than 900 substances. "The IARC Monographs are perceived as a definitive wellspring of data" and might be utilized by national and universal experts in making hazard evaluations.

---

### **9.8.3 NON-ANIMAL ALTERNATIVE METHODS**

---



Non-creature techniques incorporate cell-based tests and computational forecast models. Mutagenicity and genotoxicity measures can be utilized to demonstrate conceivable cancer-causing substances, and the two in vitro strategies depicted underneath (cell change and hole intersection intercellular correspondence) can be utilized to recognize conceivable cancer-causing agents, including nongenotoxic cancer-causing agents. Contrasted with the in vivo cancer-causing nature measures, in vitro strategies are fundamentally speedier and more affordable, yet current techniques are not viewed as adequate to fill in as full creature substitutions as of now.

Cell change examines (CTA) depend on distinguishing phenotypic changes instigated by chemicals in mammalian cell societies. The most generally utilized of these tests are the Syrian hamster fetus (SHE) examine, the low-pH SHE test, the Balb/c 3T3 measure, and the C3H10T1/2 test (Maurici, et al., 2005). The SHE test is accepted to recognize early strides of carcinogenesis, and the Balb/c and C3H10 measures later cancer-causing changes (OECD, 2006). These examines decide the cytotoxicity of test substances by measuring impacts on morphology, state framing capacity, as well as development rate (Combes, et al., 1999). "Collected confirmation unequivocally bolsters the presumption that phone and sub-atomic procedures engaged with cell change in vitro are like those of in vivo carcinogenesis" (Combes, et al., 1999; OECD, 2006). An ECVAM prevalidation venture on SHE and Balb/3T3 examines is under way. The hole intersection intercellular correspondence (GJIC) technique depends on the interruption of the intercellular trade of low-atomic weight particles through the hole intersections of nearby cells; this disturbance can bring about strange cell development and conduct (Maurici, et al., 2005a). The examine has all the earmarks of being a decent possibility for screening for nongenotoxic cancer-causing agents and tumor promoters, however despite everything it should be institutionalized and approved.

Quantitative and subjective structure-action relationship models (QSARs and SARs) and master frameworks have been created to anticipate cancer-causing nature. A few late productions have looked into models, for example, TOPKAT, CASE, and DEREK, utilized by administrative experts (Cronin, et al., 2003; OECD, 2007). All in all, the calculation of cancer-causing nature is unpredictable, and prescient ability

has been restricted. The US FDA financed the advancement of MultiCASE in view of information from administrative entries, and it was accounted for to have enhanced predictivity (Cronin, et al., 2003).

Mutagenicity/genotoxicity examines are the most ordinarily utilized as a part of vitro test frameworks to anticipate cancer-causing nature. Mutagenicity alludes to the enlistment of transmissible changes in the structure of the hereditary material of cells or life forms (Maurici, et al., 2005b). Changes may include a solitary quality or a gathering of qualities. Genotoxicity is a more extensive term that alludes to changes to the structure or number of qualities by means of substance communication with DNA as well as nonDNA targets, for example, the shaft device and topoisomerase chemicals (Maurici, et al., 2005b). The term genotoxicity is by and large utilized unless a particular test is being talked about. Being used for more than 30 years, genotoxicity examines are utilized in a level testing approach that begins with Tier I in vitro tests, trailed by Tier II in vivo genotoxicity tests to decide the natural importance of chemicals that are sure in the in vitro tests. Regular genotoxicity testing batteries incorporate examines that measure transformations and also basic and numerical chromosome abnormalities (as looked into in Maurici, et al., 2005b).

Eight in vitro genotoxicity test techniques, four of which are usually utilized, have been received at the EU level with OECD rules (see table beneath). These four in vitro measures incorporate two mutagenicity test techniques in view of bacterial cells (the bacterial switch change test [Ames test], OECD TG 471; and the *Escherichia coli* turn around transformation examine, OECD TG 472), and also two strategies in light of mammalian cells (the in vitro mammalian chromosome variation test, OECD TG 473; and the in vitro mammalian cell quality transformation test, OECD TG 476). Furthermore, the European Center for the Validation of Alternative Methods (ECVAM) approved the in vitro micronucleus test for genotoxicity testing in 2006 as a contrasting option to the in vitro chromosome deviation test (ESAC proclamation: 17 November 2006; modified OECD TG 487, in arrangement).

Various other in vitro genotoxicity tests, incorporating the in vitro Comet examine, are being produced yet are not yet approved.

Table 1. **OECD TGs** for in vitro genotoxicity and mutagenicity testing

TG 471	Bacterial Reverse Mutation Test (Ames Test)
TG 472	Genetic Toxicology: Escherichia coli, Reverse Assay
TG 473	In Vitro Mammalian Chromosome Aberration Test
TG 476	In Vitro Mammalian Cell Gene Mutation Test
TG 479	Genetic Toxicology: In Vitro Sister Chromatid Exchange Assay in Mammalian Cells
TG 480	Genetic Toxicology: Saccharomyces cerevisiae, Gene Mutation Assay
TG 481	Genetic Toxicology: Saccharomyces cerevisiae, Mitotic Recombination Assay
TG 482	Genetic Toxicology: DNA Damage and Repair, Unscheduled DNA Synthesis in Mammalian Cells in vitro
TG 487	In vitro Mammalian Cell Micronucleus Test

A current examination of the execution of the most well-known in vitro genotoxicity tests for expectation of cancer-causing nature has been distributed (Kirkland, et al., 2005, p. 200). In this evaluation, a battery of three in vitro genotoxicity assays– the Ames test, the mouse lymphoma test (MLA), and the in vitro micronucleus (MN) or chromosomal changes (CA) test– separated between rat cancer-causing agents and noncarcinogens when each of the three tests were sure or every one of the three were negative (Kirkland, et al., 2005). The affectability of the information was high, yet the specificity of the mammalian measures was poor. Truth be told, 75-90% of rat noncarcinogens were sure in at least one of the tests, bringing about a high number of false positive outcomes. Along these lines, it isn't

conceivable as of now to depend on current in vitro genotoxicity tests alone, without the Tier II in vivo genotoxicity tests.

---

#### **9.8.4 VALIDATION AND ACCEPTANCE OF NON-ANIMAL ALTERNATIVE METHODS**

---

The Interagency Coordinating Committee on the Validation of Alternative Methods (ICCVAM) and ECVAM has not formally approved any option techniques for cancer-causing nature testing right now.

ECVAM is leading a prevalidation/approval contemplate on three cell change examines: SHE cells at pH 6.7; SHE cells at pH 7.0; and Balb/c 3T3 cell line. An OECD TG is being drafted at the same time. The prevalidation think about stage was finished in 2010, and the Validation Management Team reasoned that "institutionalized conventions are presently accessible that ought to be the reason for sometime later. The SHE pH 6.7, and the SHE pH 7.0 conventions and the examines framework themselves are transferable amongst research facilities, and are reproducible inside and between-labs. For the Balb/c 3T3 strategy, a few illuminations and adjustments to the convention were expected to acquire reproducible outcomes. In general, three techniques have appeared to be profitable to identify rat cancer-causing agents." The outcomes from the prevalidation ponders are at present experiencing peer audit with the ESAC.

Because of the different phases of carcinogenesis, the long in vivo day and age required, the various instruments, and the requirement for metabolic transformation of a few substances, existing cell-based measures can be utilized just in a layered testing plan or test battery as an incomplete swap for the creature bioassays (Maurici, et al., 2005a). An ECVAM board couldn't give an expected date to the aggregate trade of creature testing for cancer-causing nature at the EU level (Maurici, et al., 2005a). An ECVAM board reasoned that aggregate swap of creature testing for genotoxicity isn't doable inside the following 12 years (Maurici et al., 2005b). The accompanying graph speaks to the course of events for approval of non-creature options for cancer-causing nature testing proposed by the board in 2005.

---

## 9.9 SUMMARY

---

The scientific toxicologist might be required to recognize, distinguish, and by and large measure a wide assortment of mixes in tests from any piece of the body or in related materials, for example, deposits in syringes or in soil. This book gives standards and pragmatic data on the examination of medications and toxins in organic examples, especially clinical and scientific examples.

Subsequent to giving some foundation data the book covers parts of test gathering, transport, stockpiling and transfer, and test arrangement. Explanatory procedures - shading tests and spectrophotometry, chromatography and electro-phoresis, mass spectrometry, and immunoassay – are canvassed top to bottom, and a section is dedicated to the examination of follow components and dangerous metals. General parts of technique usage/approval and research center operation are itemized, similar to the part of the toxicology lab in approving and observing the execution of purpose of care testing (POCT) gadgets. The book closes with surveys of Toxic reaction of blood, organ work tests, teratogenic, conceptive test, cancer-causing test and general parts of the understanding of systematic toxicology comes about.

- A unmistakably composed, commonsense, incorporated way to deal with the nuts and bolts of systematic toxicology.
- Focuses on logical, measurable and pharmacokinetic standards instead of point by point applications.
- Assumes just fundamental information of diagnostic science.
- An going with site gives extra material and connections to related locales.

---

## 9.10 GLOSSARY

---

### **Absorption**

The process of taking in. For a person or an animal, absorption is the process of a substance getting into the body through the eyes, skin, stomach, intestines, or lungs.

### **Acute**

Occurring over a short time [compare with chronic].

### **Acute exposure**

Contact with a substance that occurs once or for only a short time (up to 14 days) [compare with intermediate duration exposure and chronic exposure].

**Additive effect**

A biologic response to exposure to multiple substances that equals the sum of responses of all the individual substances added together [compare with antagonistic effect and synergistic effect].

**Adverse health effect**

A change in body functions or cell structure that might lead to disease or health problems

**Aerobic**

Requiring oxygen [compare with anaerobic].

**Ambient**

Surrounding (for example, ambient air).

**Anaerobic**

requiring the absence of oxygen [compare with aerobic].

**Analyte**

A substance measured in the laboratory. A chemical for which a sample (such as water, air, or blood) is tested in a laboratory. For example, if the analyte is mercury, the laboratory test will determine the amount of mercury in the sample.

**Analytic epidemiologic study**

A study that evaluates the association between exposure to hazardous substances and disease by testing scientific hypotheses.

**Antagonistic effect**

A biologic response to exposure to multiple substances that is **less** than would be expected if the known effects of the individual substances were added together [compare with additive effect and synergistic effect].

**Background level**

An average or expected amount of a substance or radioactive material in a specific environment, or typical amounts of substances that occur naturally in an environment.

**Biodegradation**

Decomposition or breakdown of a substance through the action of microorganisms (such as bacteria or fungi) or other natural physical processes (such as sunlight).

**Biologic indicators of exposure study**

A study that uses (a) biomedical testing or (b) the measurement of a substance [an analyte], its metabolite, or another marker of exposure in human body fluids or tissues to confirm human exposure to a hazardous substance [also see exposure investigation].

**Biologic monitoring**

Measuring hazardous substances in biologic materials (such as blood, hair, urine, or breath) to determine whether exposure has occurred. A blood test for lead is an example of biologic monitoring.

**Biologic uptake**

The transfer of substances from the environment to plants, animals, and humans.

**Biomedical testing**

Testing of persons to find out whether a change in a body function might have occurred because of exposure to a hazardous substance.

**Biota**

Plants and animals in an environment. Some of these plants and animals might be sources of food, clothing, or medicines for people.

**Body burden**

The total amount of a substance in the body. Some substances build up in the body because they are stored in fat or bone or because they leave the body very slowly.

**Cancer**

Any one of a group of diseases that occur when cells in the body become abnormal and grow or multiply out of control.

**Cancer risk**

A theoretical risk for getting cancer if exposed to a substance every day for 70 years (a lifetime exposure). The true risk might be lower.

**Carcinogen**

A substance that causes cancer.

**Case study**

A medical or epidemiologic evaluation of one person or a small group of people to gather information about specific health conditions and past exposures.

**Case-control study**

A study that compares exposures of people who have a disease or condition (cases) with people who do not have the disease or condition (controls). Exposures that are more common among the cases may be considered as possible risk factors for the disease.

**CAS registry number**

A unique number assigned to a substance or mixture by the American Chemical Society Abstracts Service .

**Central nervous system**

The part of the nervous system that consists of the brain and the spinal cord.

**Chronic**

Occurring over a long time.

**Chronic exposure**

Contact with a substance that occurs over a long time (more than 1 year)

**Cluster investigation**



A review of an unusual number, real or perceived, of health events (for example, reports of cancer) grouped together in time and location. Cluster investigations are designed to confirm case reports; determine whether they represent an unusual disease occurrence; and, if possible, explore possible causes and contributing environmental factors.

**Community Assistance Panel (CAP)**

A group of people from a community and from health and environmental agencies who work with ATSDR to resolve issues and problems related to hazardous substances in the community. CAP members work with ATSDR to gather and review community health concerns, provide information on how people might have been or might now be exposed to hazardous substances, and inform ATSDR on ways to involve the community in its activities.

**Comparison value (CV)**

Calculated concentration of a substance in air, water, food, or soil that is unlikely to cause harmful (adverse) health effects in exposed people. The CV is used as a screening level during the public health assessment process. Substances found in amounts greater than their CVs might be selected for further evaluation in the public health assessment process.

**Completed exposure pathway Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act of 1980 (CERCLA)**

CERCLA, also known as Superfund, is the federal law that concerns the removal or cleanup of hazardous substances in the environment and at hazardous waste sites. ATSDR, which was created by CERCLA, is responsible for assessing health issues and supporting public health activities related to hazardous waste sites or other environmental releases of hazardous substances.

**Concentration**

The amount of a substance present in a certain amount of soil, water, air, food, blood, hair, urine, breath, or any other media.

**Contaminant**

A substance that is either present in an environment where it does not belong or is present at levels that might cause harmful (adverse) health effects.

**Volatile organic compounds (VOCs)**

Organic compounds that evaporate readily into the air. VOCs include substances such as benzene, toluene, methylene chloride, and methyl chloroform.

---

**9.11 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS AND POSSIBLE ANSWERS**

---

**Multiple choice questions**

1. Which of the following characterizes the use of vasopressors in management of a potential organ donor?
  - a. Their use precludes procurement of the kidneys
  - b. Only agents devoid of inotropic activity should be used
  - c. Norepinephrine is the agent of choice
  - d. The choice of agents must be individualized based on physiologic parameters
2. Which of the following electrolyte abnormalities results from the effects of brain death on the posterior pituitary gland?
  - a. Hyponatremia
  - b. Hypernatremia
  - c. Hyperkalemia
  - d. Hypokalemia
  - e. Hypocalcemia
3. Hormonal replacement therapy for brain dead donors includes administration of all of the following, EXCEPT:
  - a. Growth hormone
  - b. Vasopressin
  - c. Thyroxine
  - d. Corticosteroids
4. Which of the following immunosuppressants most commonly affects spermatogenesis?
  - a. Sirolimus
  - b. Tacrolimus
  - c. Cyclosporine
  - d. Azathioprine
5. The minimum allowable age for live kidney donors is:
  - a. 14 years
  - b. 16 years

c. 18 years

d. 21 years

**Fill in the blanks:**

1. Ethyl alcohol is considered to be a\_\_\_\_\_

a. depressant

b. hallucinogen

c. stimulant

d. narcotic

2. Marijuana is considered to be a\_\_\_\_\_

a. hallucinogen

b. narcotic

c. depressant

d. stimulant

3. The direct allogeneic antigen presentation involves the recognition of peptides through intact MHC molecules displayed on \_\_\_\_\_ APCs while indirect allogeneic antigen presentation involves the recognition of \_\_\_\_\_ through self - MHC displayed on \_\_\_\_\_ APCs.

a. Donor; host MHC; host

b. Host; host MHC; donor

c. Donor; donor MHC; host

d. Host; donor MHC; donor

4. All of the following are features of cytomegalovirus syndrome, EXCEPT\_\_\_\_\_

a. Fatigue

b. Fever

c. Leukocytosis

d. Thrombocytopenia

e. Myalgias

5. Transplanted \_\_\_\_\_ is mostly frequently affected by BK polyoma virus?

a. Kidney

b. Heart

c. Lung

d. Liver

**Short questions:**

1. Write short note on analytical taxonomy.
2. What are the toxic responses of blood?
3. Give short note on teratogenic?

4. What tests are used for fertility/infertility, give short description?
5. Write short notes on reproductive and carcinogenic test.

**Long questions:**

1. Define analytical taxonomy and its applications?
2. What are the toxic responses of blood?
3. Describe organ function tests.
4. What cause teratogenic, its cause and remedies?
5. Which tests are used to check reproductive and carcinogenic toxicity?.

---

**9.12 REFERENCES**

---

1. Carcinogenic Potency Database (CPDB): Easily accessed results of 6,153 experiments on 1,485 chemicals from 1,426 papers and 429 NCI/NTP (National Cancer Institute/National Toxicology program) Technical Reports.
2. Chemical Carcinogenesis Research Information System (CCRIS): Carcinogenicity and mutagenicity test results for more than 8,000 chemicals.
3. Combes, R., Balls, M., Curren, R., et al. (1999). Cell transformation assays as predictors of human carcinogenicity. ECVAM Workshop Report 39. *Altern. Lab. Anim.* 27, 745-767.
4. Cronin, M.T.D., Jaworska, J.S., Walker, J.D., et al. (2003). Use of QSARs in International Decision-Making Frameworks to Predict Health Effects of Chemical Substances. *Environ. Health Perspect.* 111, 1391-1401. Available here.
5. ECVAM. (2002). Genotoxicity and carcinogenicity. *Altern. Lab. Anim.* 30, Suppl. 1, 83-93.
6. Goodman, J.I. (2001). A perspective on current and future uses of alternative models for carcinogenicity testing. *Toxicol. Pathol.* 29, Suppl., 173-176.
7. Hendrix, M.J., Seftor, E.A., Seftor, R.E., et al. (2007). Reprogramming metastatic tumour cells with embryonic microenvironments. *Nat. Rev. Cancer.* 7, 246-255.
8. Junghans, T.B., Sevin, I.F., Ionin, B. & Seifried, H. (2004). Cancer information resources: Digital and online sources. *Toxicol.* 198, 177-193.
9. Maurici, D., Aardema, M., Corvi, R., et al. (2005a). Carcinogenicity. *Altern. Lab. Anim.* 33, Suppl. 1, 177-182.

10. United Nations Economic Commission for Europe (UNECE). (2004). Globally Harmonized System of classification and labeling of chemicals (GHS). Part 3, Health and environmental hazards. Chapter 3.6, Carcinogenicity. Available here.